Operating Instructions
Software Guide

Read This First

Manuals for This Printer **8**

Preparing for Printing

Quick Install **9**
Confirming the Connection Method **11**
Network Connection 11
Local Connection 13
Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port **15**
Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 15
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver (TCP/IP) 16
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver (NetBEUI) 17
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver (IPP) 19
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - TCP/IP) 21
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - NetBEUI) 22
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - IPP) 24
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - TCP/IP) 26
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - NetBEUI) 27
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - IPP) 28
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - TCP/IP) 30
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - IPP) 31
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0 - TCP/IP) 33
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0 - NetBEUI) 34
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0 - IPP) 35
Changing the Port Settings for SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 37

Copyright © 2004, 2005

Using the Standard TCP/IP Port 39
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver 39
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 40
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003) 41
Using the LPR Port 44
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver 44
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 45
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003) 46
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0) 47
Using as the Windows Network Printer 49
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver 49
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me) 50
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 51
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003) 52
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0) 54
Using as the NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer 56
When using the PostScript 3 Printer Driver 57
Form Feed 58
Banner Page 58
Printing after Resetting the Printer 58
Installing the Printer Driver Using USB 59
Windows 98 SE/Me - USB 59
Windows 2000 - USB 61
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - USB 62
Troubleshooting USB 63
Printing with Parallel Connection 65
Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver 65
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me) 66
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 67
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003) 68
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0) 69
Installing the Printer Driver Using IEEE 1394 (SCSI print) 70
Windows 2000 70
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 72
Printing with Bluetooth Connection 74
Supported Profiles 74
Printing with Bluetooth Connection 74
If a Message Appears during Installation 77
Making Option Settings for the Printer 78
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication 78
If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled 79

Setting Up the Printer Driver

PCL - Accessing the Printer Properties 81
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties 81
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties 82
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - Accessing the Printer Properties 84

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties 85
RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties 88
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties 88
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties 89
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - Accessing the Printer Properties 91
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties 93
PostScript 3 - Setting Up for Printing 96
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties 96
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties 97
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - Accessing the Printer Properties 99
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties 100
Mac OS - Setting Up for Printing 102

Other Print Operations

Printing a PDF File Directly 104
Using DeskTopBinder Lite 104
Installing DeskTopBinder Lite 104
Using Commands 105
Sample Print 106
Printing the First Set 106
Printing the Remaining Sets 107
Deleting a Sample Print File 108
Checking the Error Log 108
Locked Print 110
Sending Print Job to the Printer 110
Entering a Password 111
Deleting a Locked Print File 112
Checking the Error Log 113
Form Feed 114
Canceling a Print Job 115
Windows - Canceling a Print Job 115
Mac OS - Canceling a Print Job 116
Caution During Printing 118
Collate 118
Spool Printing 118
Cover 120
Memory Capacity and Paper Size 120

Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

Menu Chart 122
Paper Input Menu 126
Changing the paper input menu 126
Paper Input menu parameters 127
List/Test Print Menu 129
Printing a Configuration Page 129
Interpreting the configuration page 129

List/Test Print menu parameters 131
Maintenance Menu 133
Changing the maintenance menu 133
Maintenance menu parameters 135
System Menu 139
Changing the system menu 139
System menu parameters 139
Host Interface Menu 147
Changing the Host Interface menu 147
Host Interface menu parameters 147
PCL Menu 154
Changing the PCL menu 154
PCL Menu parameters 154
PS Menu 157
Changing the PS menu 157
PS Menu parameters 157
PDF Menu 159
Changing the PDF menu 159
PDF Menu parameters 159
Language Menu 161
Changing the language menu 161
Language menu parameters 161

Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

Using Web Image Monitor 162
Displaying Top Page 163
About Menu and Mode 164
Access in the Administrator Mode 165
Displaying Web Image Monitor Help 165
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin 167
Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin 168
Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration 169
Locking the Menus on the Printer's Control Panel 169
Changing the Paper Type 170
Managing User Information 171
Configuring the Energy Saver Mode 174
Setting a Password 174
Checking the Printer Status 175
Changing Names and Comments 175
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 177
Monitoring Printers 177
Checking the Printer Status 177
When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 178
Printer Status Notification by E-Mail 179
Remote Maintenance by telnet 181
Using telnet 181
access 182

appletalk 182
autonet 183
btconfig 183
devicename 184
dhcp 184
diprint 185
dns 186
domainname 187
help 188
hostname 188
ifconfig 189
info 190
ipp 190
netware 191
passwd 192
prnlog 193
rendezvous 193
route 195
set 196
show 197
slp 198
smb 198
snmp 199
sntp 202
spoolsw 202
sprint 203
status 203
syslog 204
upnp 204
web 204
wiconfig 205
wins 207
SNMP 209
Getting Printer Information over the Network 210
Current Printer Status 210
Printer configuration 216
Understanding the Displayed Information 218
Print Job Information 218
Print Log Information 218
Configuring the Network Interface Board 219
Message List 225
System Log Information 225

Using a Printer Server

Preparing Printer Server 231
Printing notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 231
Using NetWare 233
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x) 234

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5) 235
Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment 236
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x) 239
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5) 241

Special Operations under Windows

Printing Files Directly from Windows 245
Setup 245
Using a Host Name Instead of an IP Address 245
Printing Commands 247

Mac OS Configuration

Mac OS 250
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver and PPD File 250
Setting Up PPD Files 251
Creating a Desktop Printer Icon 251
Setting Up Options 252
Installing the ColorSync Profiles 252
Installing Adobe Type Manager 253
Installing Screen fonts 254
Using USB Interface 254
Changing to EtherTalk 255
Mac OS X 257
Installing the PPD Files 257
Setting Up the PPD File 257
Setting Up Options 258
Using USB Interface 258
Using Rendezvous 258
Changing to EtherTalk 259
Configuring the Printer 260
Using PostScript 3 261
Job Type 261
Duplex Printing 263
Color Mode 264
Gradation 264
Color Profile 264
Color Setting 265
CMYK Simulation Profile 266
Dithering 266
Gray Reproduction 266
Color Matching 266
Printer Utility for Mac 267
Installing Printer Utility for Mac 267
Starting Printer Utility for Mac 268
Printer Utility for Mac Functions 268

Appendix

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM 275
Printer Drivers for This Printer 275
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin 276
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 277
Cautions to Take When Using in a network 280
Connecting a Dial-up Router to a Network 280
Using DHCP 280
Configuring the WINS Server 282
Using the Dynamic DNS Function 284
Configuring SSL Encryption 286
SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption 286
User Settings for SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) 289
Installing Font Manager 2000 291
Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0 292
When Using Windows Terminal Service/MetaFrame 293
Operating Environment 293
Supported Printer Drivers 293
Limitations 293
Cautions When Using Bluetooth Interface Unit 295
Information about Installed Applications 296
expat 296
JPEG LIBRARY 296
NetBSD 296
Samba(Ver 2.2.2-1.1) 298
RSA BSAFE® 299

Manuals for This Printer

For particular functions, see the relevant parts of the manual.

❖ **Setup Guide**
Provides information about printer setup and options.

❖ **Maintenance Guide**
Provides information about paper, replacing supplies, and dealing with paper jams and error messages.

❖ **Software Guide (HTML) (this manual)**
Provides basic information about installing the printer driver and software, using the printer in a network environment, and configuration and setup.
Also, provides information about configuring and monitoring printer status using software and a Web browser.

Note

❒ Some functions cannot be used depending on your printer.

Copyright © 2004, 2005

Quick Install

Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0 users can easily install this software using the CD-ROM provided.

Using Quick Install, the PCL printer driver and/or RPCS printer driver and SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is installed under network environment, and TCP/IP port will be set.

Important

- To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrator.
- The Quick Install is not available when using this printer under USB connection. If you connect using USB, see p.59 “Installing the Printer Driver Using USB”.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “ Setup.exe ” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [Quick Install].

The software license agreement appears in the **[License Agreement]** dialog box.

5 After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement], and then click [Next].

6 Select the printer model you want to use in the [Select Printer] dialog box.

For network connection via TCP/IP, select the printer whose IP address is displayed in **[Connect To]**.

For parallel connection, select the printer whose printer port is displayed in **[Connect To]**.

7 Click [Install].

The printer driver installation starts.

8 Click [Finish].

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Copyright © 2004, 2005

9 Click [Exit] in the first dialog box of the installer, and then take out the CD-ROM.

Note

❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

❒ Select a printer to whose IP address is displayed in **[Connect To]** to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client when using TCP/IP.

Reference

Quick Install is not available unless bidirectional communication between the printer and computer is enabled via parallel connection. See p.79 “If Bi-directional Communication is Disabled” for details about bidirectional communication between printer and computer.

Confirming the Connection Method

This printer supports network and local connection.

Before installing the printer driver, check how the printer is connected. Follow the driver installation procedure that is appropriate to the connection method.

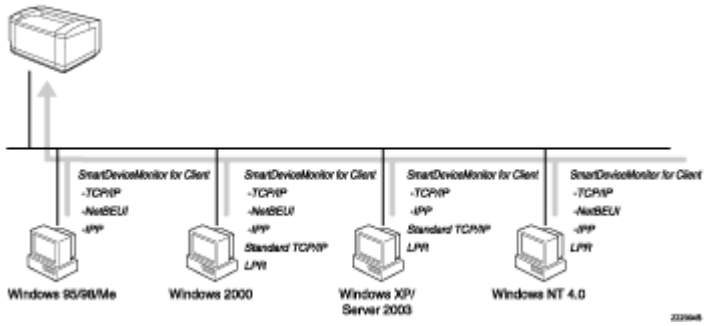
Network Connection

This printer can be used as a Windows printing port or network printer.

Using this printer as the Windows printing port

Network connections can be established through Ethernet, IEEE 802.11b, and IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394).

Available ports are determined based on the combination of Windows operating system version and connection method used.



❖ **Windows 95/98**

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/ IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port
IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394)	None

❖ **Windows Me**

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/ IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port
IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394)	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port

❖ **Windows 2000**

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/ IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP LPR port

Connection Method	Available Ports
IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394)	None

❖ Windows XP

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/ IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP LPR port
IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394)	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP

❖ Windows Server 2003

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/ IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP LPR port
IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394)	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP

❖ Windows NT 4.0

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/ IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port LPR port
IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394)	None

Reference

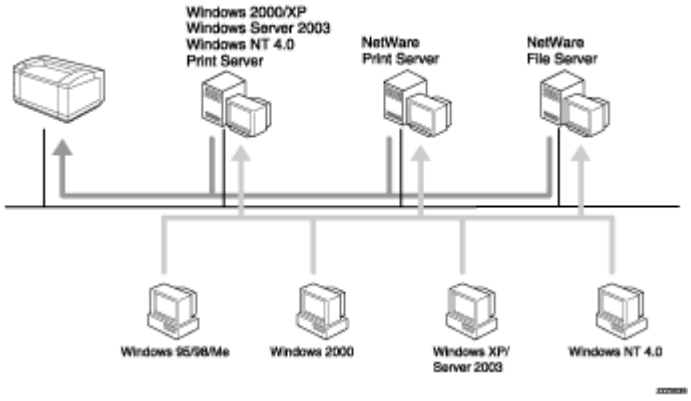
See the explanation of how to install the printer driver for each type of port. For the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port, see p.15 “Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port”.

For the Standard TCP/IP port, see p.39 “Using the Standard TCP/IP Port”.

For the LPR port, see p.44 “Using the LPR Port”.

Using as a network printer

This printer can be used as the Windows network printer, the NetWare print server, or the NetWare remote printer.



Reference

See the explanation of how to install the printer driver for each type of network printer.

For the Windows network printer, see p.49 “Using as the Windows Network Printer”.

For the NetWare print server and remote printer, see p.56 “Using as the NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer”.

Local Connection

Local connections can be established via parallel, USB, IEEE 1394 (SCSI print), and Bluetooth connections.

Windows operating system version determines the available connection methods.

- Windows 95:
  - Parallel connections
- Windows 98:
  - Parallel connections
- Windows 98 SE/Me:
  - USB, Parallel, and Bluetooth connections
- Windows 2000:
  - USB, Parallel, IEEE 1394 (SCSI print), and Bluetooth connections
- Windows XP:
  - USB, Parallel, IEEE 1394 (SCSI print), and Bluetooth connections
- Windows Server 2003:

  - USB, Parallel, IEEE 1394 (SCSI print), and Bluetooth connections
- Windows NT 4.0:
  - Parallel connections

Reference

See the explanation of how to install the printer driver for each method of connection.

For the USB connection, see p.59 “Installing the Printer Driver Using USB”.

For the parallel connection, see p.65 “Printing with Parallel Connection”.

For the IEEE 1394 (SCSI print) connection, see p.70 “Installing the Printer Driver Using IEEE 1394 (SCSI print)”.

For the Bluetooth connection, see p.74 “Printing with Bluetooth Connection”.

Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port

Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Important

- To install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrator.
- Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client before installing the printer driver when using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client/Admin].

5 The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client installer starts.

6 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Next >].

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client installer starts.

7 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box. After reading through its contents, click [Yes] to accept it.

8 Follow the instructions on the display to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

9 Click [OK].

If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, restart the computer.

Note

- To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

❒ SmartDeviceMonitor for Client supports the following languages: Czech, Danish, German, English, Spanish, French, Italian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Finnish, Swedish, Chinese Simple and Chinese Traditional.

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver (TCP/IP)

Important

❒ To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.

6 Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

Note

❒ The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9 Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

10 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [New Port...].

11 Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

12 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

Under Windows 95/98/Me, you cannot add an IP address partially similar to the one already used. For example, if "192.168.0.2" is in use, "192.168.0.2xx" cannot be used. Similarly, if "192.168.0.20" is in use, "192.168.0.2" cannot be used.

13 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

14 Set a user code, if necessary.

This allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check statistics about the number of sheets which each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. Neither alphabetic characters nor symbols are available.

15 Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

16 Click [Finish].

Installation starts.

17 Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, install use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver (NetBEUI)

Important

- To install this printer driver under Windows 2000, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 do not support NetBEUI.
- You cannot print using printers beyond routers.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe”on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]** , and then click **[Next]**.

6 Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

Note

❒ The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9 Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

10 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [New Port...].

11 Click [NetBEUI], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using NetBEUI appears.

12 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the NetBEUI address. The NetBEUI address can be checked with the configuration page. For information about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”. The NetBEUI address appears in the format of “\\RNPxxxx\xxx” on the configuration page. Enter the printer's network path in the format of “%%Computer name\Share name”. Use “\\” instead of “%%” at the beginning.

13 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

14 Set a user code, if necessary.

This allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check statistics about the number of sheets which each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. Neither alphabetic characters nor symbols are available.

15 Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

16 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

17 Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ The protocol is set to inactive as default. Enable it using Web Image Monitor or Telnet.

❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 “If a Message Appears during Installation”.

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver (IPP)

Important

❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. For this, log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.

6 Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

Note

❒ The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9 Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

10 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [New Port...].

11 Click [IPP].

12 In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://printer's address/printer" as the printer's address.

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL(a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://printer's address/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

```
http://192.168.15.16/printer
https://192.168.15.16/printer
```

You can enter "http://printer's address/ipp" as the printer's address.

13 Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

14 Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

15 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

16 Set a user code, if necessary.

This allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check the number of sheets each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. No alphabetic characters or symbols can be entered.

17 Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

18 Click [Finish].

Installation starts.

19 Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 “If a Message Appears during Installation”.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - TCP/IP)

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next].

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

7 **Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].**

8 **In the [Available ports:] box, click [Printer Port], and then click [Next].**

9 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

10 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**

11 **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

The **[Printers]** window appears.

12 **Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

13 **On the [Details] tab, click [Add Port...].**

14 **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor] in the [Other] list, and then click [OK].**

15 **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

16 **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

You cannot add an IP address partially similar to the one already used. For example, if “192.168.0.2” is in use, “192.168.0.2xx” cannot be used. Similarly, if “192.168.0.20” is in use, “192.168.0.2” cannot be used.

17 **Click [OK].**

18 **Check that the selected port is highlighted in [Printer to the following port], and then click [OK].**

19 **Restart the computer to complete installation.**

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - NetBEUI)

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe”on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next].

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

7 Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].

8 In the [Available ports:] box, click [Printer Port], and then click [Next].

9 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

10 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

11 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

12 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

13 On the [Details] tab, click [Add Port...].

14 Click [Other] in the [SmartDeviceMonitor] list, and then click [OK].

15 Click [NetBEUI], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using **[NetBEUI]** appears.

16 Click the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the NetBEUI address. The NetBEUI address can be checked with the configuration page. For information about printing a configuration page, see p.129 "Printing a Configuration Page". The NetBEUI address appears in the format of "\\RNPxxxx\xxx" on the configuration page. Enter the printer's network path in the format of "%%Computer name\Share name". Use "\\" instead of "%%" at the beginning.

You cannot print using printers beyond routers.

17 Click [OK].

18 Check that the selected port is highlighted in [Printer to the following port], and then click [OK].

19 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - IPP)

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next].

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

7 Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].

8 In the [Available ports:] box, click [Printer Port], and then click [Next].

9 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

10 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

11 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

12 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

13 On the [Details] tab, click [Add Port...].

14 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor] in the [Other] list, and then click [OK].

15 Click [IPP].

16 In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://(printer's address)/printer" as the printer's address.

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://(printer's address)/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

```
http://192.168.15.16/printer
https://192.168.15.16/printer
```

You can enter "http://(printer's address)/ipp" as the printer's address.

17 Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

18 Click [Detailed Settings] to configure proxy server, IPP user name, and other settings. Make these settings, and then click [OK]. For details, see Help on the CD-ROM.

Note

❒ For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

19 Click [OK].

20 Check that the selected port is highlighted in [Printer to the following port], and then click [OK] .

21 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - TCP/IP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].

7 Click [Add Port...].

8 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].

9 Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

10 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

11 Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

12 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

13 Click [Next >].

14 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

15 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - NetBEUI)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Add Port...].**

8 **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**

9 **Click [NetBEUI], and then click [Search].**

A list of printers using NetBEUI appears.

10 **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the NetBEUI address. The NetBEUI address can be checked with the configuration page. For information about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”. The NetBEUI address appears in the format of “\\RNPxxxx\xxx” on the configuration page. Enter the printer's network path in the format of “%%Computer name\Share name”. Use“%%” instead of “\\” at the beginning.

You cannot print using printers beyond routers.

11 **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

12 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

13 **Click [Next >].**

14 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

15 **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - IPP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].

7 Click [Add Port...].

8 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].

9 Click [IPP].

10 In the [Printer URL] box, enter “http://(printer's address)/printer” as the printer's address.

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter “https://(printer's address)/printer” (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

```
http://192.168.15.16/printer
https://192.168.15.16/printer
```

You can enter “http://(printer's address)/ipp” as the printer's address.

11 Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the name of any existing port.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

12 Click [Detailed Settings] to configure proxy server, the IPP user name and other settings. Specify the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

13 Click [OK].

14 Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

15 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

16 **Click [Next >].**

17 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

18 **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - TCP/IP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe”on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Create a new port:].**

8 **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**

9 **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

A list of printers using **[TCP/IP]** appears.

10 **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

11 **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

12 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

13 **Click [Next >].**

14 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

15 **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - IPP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5. **Click [Next >].**

6. **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**

7. **Click [Create a new port:].**

8. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**

9. **Click [IPP].**

10. **In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://(printer's address)/printer" as the printer's address.**

    If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://(printer's address)/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

    (example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

    http://192.168.15.16/printer
    https://192.168.15.16/printer

    You can enter "http://(printer's address)/ipp" as the printer's address.

11. **Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.**

    If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

12. **Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.**

    For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

13. **Click [OK].**

14. **Check that the name of the printer driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

15. **Change the name of the printer if you want, and then click [Next >].**

    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

16. **Click [Next >].**

17. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

18. **Click [Finish].**

    The printer driver installation starts.

    Note

    ❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0 - TCP/IP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**

2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.

   Note

   ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

   Add Printer Wizard starts.

5. **Click [Next].**

6. **Click [Add Port:].**

7. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [New Port...].**

8. **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

   A list of printers using **[TCP/IP]** appears.

9. **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

   Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

10. **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

11. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

13 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation . For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0 - NetBEUI)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Add Port:].

7 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [New Port...].

8 Click [NetBEUI], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using NetBEUI appears.

9 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer are displayed. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify address]**, and then enter the NetBEUI address. The NetBEUI address can be checked with the configuration page. For information about printing a configuration page, see p.129 "Printing a Configuration Page". The NetBEUI address appears in the format of "\\RNPxxxx\xxx" on the configuration page. Enter the printer's network path in the format of "%%Computer name\Share name". Use "%%" instead of "\\" at the beginning.

You cannot print using printers beyond routers.

10 Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

11 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

13 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0 - IPP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5. **Click [Next].**

6. **Click [Add Port:].**

7. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [New Port...].**

8. **Click [IPP].**

9. **In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http:///(printer's address)/printer"as the printer's address.**

   If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https:///(printer's address)/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

   (example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

   http://192.168.15.16/printer
   https://192.168.15.16/printer

   You can enter "http:///(printer's address)/ipp" as the printer's address.

10. **Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.**

    If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

11. **Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.**

    For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

12. **Click [OK].**

13. **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

14. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

15. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**

    The printer driver installation starts.

16. **Restart the computer to complete installation.**

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Changing the Port Settings for SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Follow the procedure below to change the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client settings, such as TCP/IP timeout, recovery/parallel printing, and printer groups.

Note

❒ There are no settings for NetBEUI protocol.

Windows 95/98:

1. **Open [Printers] window from [Start] menu.**
2. **In the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
3. **Click the [Details] tab, and then click [Configure Port].**

   The **[Port Settings]** dialog box appears.

Windows 2000 / Windows NT 4.0:

1. **Open [Printers] window from [Start] menu.**
2. **In the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
3. **On the [Ports] tab, click [Configure Port].**

   The **[Port Settings]** dialog box appears.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003:

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
2. **In the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
3. **Click the [Details] tab, and then click [Configure Port].**

   The **[Port Settings]** dialog box appears.

   - For TCP/IP, timeout setting can be configured.

     Note

     ❒ If no settings on the **[Recovery/Parallel Printing]** tab are available, follow the procedure below.

       ① Click **[Cancel]** to close the **[Port Configuration:]** dialog box.

       ② Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, and then right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon on the taskbar.

③ Click **[Extended Features Settings]**, and then select the **[Set Recovery/Parallel Printing for each port]** check box.

④ Click **[OK]** to close the **[Extended Features Settings]** dialog box.

- User, proxy, and timeout settings can be configured for IPP.

Reference

For information about these settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

Using the Standard TCP/IP Port

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver

Important

❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, and Windows Server 2003, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**

2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.

4. **Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].**

5. **The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.**

   After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.

6. **Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.**

   You can select several printer drivers.

7. **Select the printer model you want to use.**

   The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8. **Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.**

   Note

   ❒ The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9. **Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

10. **Click [Standard TCP/IP], and then click [New Port...].**

    Configure the Standard TCP/IP port settings, and then see Windows Help if **[Standard TCP/IP Port]** does not appear.

11. **Click [Next] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

12. **Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.**

The **[Port Name]** text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary.

When screen for Device selection appears, select “RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model”.

13 Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

The installation start dialog box reappears.

14 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

15 Configure the default printer as necessary.

16 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

17 Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 “If a Message Appears during Installation”.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Add Port...].**

8 **Click [Standard TCP/IP], and then click [New Port...].**

9 **Click [Next] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

10 **Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box, and then click [Next>].**

When screen for Device selection appears, select “RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model”.

11 **Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

12 **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

13 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

14 **Click [Next >].**

15 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

16 **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation . For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].

7 Click [Create a new port:].

8 Click [Standard TCP/IP] in [Create a new Port], and then click [Next].

9 Click [Standard TCP/IP], and then click [OK].

10 Click [Next] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

11 Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box, and then click [Next >].

When screen for Device selection appears, select “RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model”.

12 Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

13 Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

14 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

15 Click [Next >].

16 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

17 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Using the LPR Port

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver

Important

❒ To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].**
5. **The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.**

   After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.
6. **Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.**

   You can select several printer drivers.
7. **Select the printer model you want to use.**

   The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.
8. **Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.**

   Note

   ❒ The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
9. **Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**
10. **Click [LPR Port], and then click [New Port...].**

    If **[LPR Port]** does not appear, see Windows Help and install it.
11. **Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.**

12 Enter "lp" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server] box, and then click [OK].

The port is added.

13 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

14 Configure the default printer as necessary.

15 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts

16 Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Add Port...].**

8 **Click [LPR Port], and then click [New Port...].**

9 **Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.**

10 **Enter "lp" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server] box, and then click [OK].**

11 **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

12 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

13 **Click [Next >].**

14 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

15 **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Create a new port:].**

8 **Click [LPR Port] in [Create a new Port], and then click [Next >].**

9 **Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.**

10 **Enter "lp" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server box], and then click [OK].**

11 **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

12 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

13 **Click [Next >].**

14 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**

15 **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Add Port:].

7 Select [LPR Port], and then click [OK].

8 Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd box] box.

9 Enter “lp” in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server] box, and then click [OK].

10 Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

11 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

13 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Using as the Windows Network Printer

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver

To use the print server, install the printer driver by selecting “Network printer server”, and then select the Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0 shared printer.

This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0 print server. Do not begin the following procedure before the client is set up and configured correctly.

Important

- ❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. For this, log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- ❒ If you print with a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing cannot be used from the client.
- ❒ If you print with a Windows XP or Windows Server 2003 print server, notification functions of SmartDeviceMonitor may not be used with the client.
- ❒ If you print with a Windows NT 4.0 print server, install the printer driver before you connect the print server to the printer.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.

6 Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Select the [Printer Name:] check box to select the printer models you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9 Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

10 Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].

11 Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.

12 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

13 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

14 Configure the user code as necessary.

For an RPCS printer driver, a user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

15 Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

16 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

17 Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 “If a Message Appears during Installation”.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me)

Important

❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next].**

6 **Click [Network Printer], and then click [Next].**

7 **Click [Browse].**

8 **Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.**

9 **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

10 **Check the location of the selected printer is shown, and then click [Next].**

11 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**

13 **Restart the computer.**

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

❒ Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Network printer], and then click [Next].

7 Click [Next].

8 Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers] window.

9 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next].

10 The printer driver installation starts.

11 Click [Next>].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 Click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.

❒ If you print with a Windows XP or Windows Server 2003 print server, SmartDeviceMonitor notification functions may not be possible for the client.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Network printer] and then click [Next].

7 Click [Next].

8 Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers] window.

9 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next].

10 The printer driver installation starts.

11 Click [Next>].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 Click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDevice-Monitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.
- ❒ To print from a Windows NT 4.0 print server, install the printer driver before you connect the print server to the printer.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Network printer], and then click [Next].

7 Click [Next].

8 Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers] window.

9 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next].

10 Check the location of the selected printer is shown, and then click [Next].

11 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].

12 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Using as the NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer

This explains how to set up the Windows computer used as the NetWare client.

Important

❒ To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

The following explanation assumes NetWare Client is installed on the client computer and the NetWare server environment is correctly set up. Install all necessary client applications before following this procedure.

Set up the printer driver while logging on to the NetWare file server.

The following values are used in the example:

- Operating system: Windows 98
- NetWare version: 4.1
- File server name: CAREE
- Queue name: R-QUEUE

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

2 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

3 Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].

4 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.

5 Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

6 Select the [Printer Name] check box to select the printer models you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

7 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

8. **Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

9. **Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].**

10. **Double-click the name of the NetWare file server on the network tree.**

    The created queue is displayed.

11. **Select the print queue, and then click [OK].**

12. **Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**

13. **Click [Finish].**

    The printer driver installation starts.

14. **Click [Finish] in the [Component selection] dialog box.**

15. **Click [Finish] in the [Introduction complete] dialog box.**

16. **In the [Printers] window, open the printer properties.**

    Under Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, open the printer properties from the **[Printers and Faxes]** window.

17. **On the [Printer Settings] tab, clear the [Form Feed] and [Enable Banner] check boxes.**

    Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0, click the **[NetWare setting]** tab.

    Do not select these check boxes since they are automatically selected by the printer driver. If you select the check boxes, the printer may not print correctly.

18. **Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

Note

❒ The protocol is set to inactive as default. Enable it using Web Image Monitor or Telnet

When using the PostScript 3 Printer Driver

Follow the procedure below to set up the PostScript 3 printer driver.

1. **In the [Printers] or [Printers and Faxes] window, open the printer properties.**

2. **Click the [PostScript] tab.**

Note

❒ When using Windows 2000/XP or Windows NT 4.0, click the **[Device Settings]** tab, and then proceed to step to clear the check box.

3 Click [Advanced].

4 Clear the [Send CTRL+D before job] and [Send CTRL+D after job] check boxes, and then click [OK].

5 Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.

Form Feed

Do not use NetWare to configure form feed. Form feed is controlled by the printer driver on Windows. If NetWare form feed is configured, the printer may not print properly.

Follow the procedure below to disable form feed according to the operating system used:

- Under Windows 95/98/Me, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[Printer Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[NetWare Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Banner Page

Do not use NetWare to configure a banner page.

Follow the procedure below to disable banner pages according to the operating system used:

- Under Windows 95/98/Me, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[Printer Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[NetWare Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Printing after Resetting the Printer

Printer to print server connection requires 30 - 40 seconds to resume after the printer is reset. During this period, jobs may be accepted (depending on NetWare specifications) but not printed.

To print after resetting the printer as the remote printer, check on the print server that the remote printer is disconnected, or wait for two minutes before trying to print.

Installing the Printer Driver Using USB

This section explains how to install printer drivers using USB.

Important

❒ Make sure that printer is connected to the computer's USB ports using the USB interface cable.

Before installing, check that only the operating system is running on the computer and no print jobs are in progress.

The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

Windows 98 SE/Me - USB

Important

❒ Installation via USB is not possible under Windows 95/98. Upgrade to Windows 98 SE/Me.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the “USB” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

1 Check that the power of the printer is off.

2 Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

3 Turn on the power of the printer.

The plug and play function starts and the **[New Hardware Found]**, **[Device Driver Wizard]**, or **[Add New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears, depending on the operating system.

4 Click [Next >].

5 Click [Search for the best driver for your device. {Recommended}.], and then click [Next >].

6 Select the [Specify a location:] check box, and then click [Browse...].

The **[Browse for Folder]** dialog box appears.

7 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

❒ When Auto Run starts, click **[Exit]**.

❒ To disable Auto Run, press the **【Shift】** key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

8 Specify the location where USB Printing Support is located, and then click [Next >].

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of USB Printing Support are stored in the following location:

D:DRIVESRPCSWIN98_ME

9 Check the location, and then click [Next].

USB Printing Support is installed.

10 Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the “USB001” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

11 Click [Next >].

12 Click [Search for the best driver for your device. {Recommended}.], and then click [Next >].

13 Select the [Specify a location:], check box, and then click [Browse...].

The **[Browse for Folder]** dialog box appears.

14 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

❒ When Auto Run starts, click **[Exit]**.

❒ To disable Auto Run, press the 【**Shift**】 key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

15 Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver is stored, and then click [Next >].

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:DRIVESRPCSWIN98_ME(Language)DISK1
- PCL 5e
  D:DRIVESPCL5EWIN98_ME(Language)DISK1
- PCL 6
  D:DRIVESPCL6WIN98_ME(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:DRIVESPS3WIN98_ME(Language)DISK1

16 Check the location, and then click [Next].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

17 Click [Finish].

Installation is complete. If installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the “USB001” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

Note

- ❒ The number after “USB” varies depending on the number of printers connected.
- ❒ It is not necessary to reinstall USB Printing Support when connecting a different printer via USB interface when USB Printing Support is installed.
- ❒ After installing USB Printing Support, if the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer.
- ❒ Install the printer driver from the CD-ROM provided with the printer.

Windows 2000 - USB

Important

- ❒ Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the “USB” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the CD-ROM provided.

1 Check that the power of the printer is off.

2 Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

3 Turn on the power of the machine.

Found New Hardware Wizard starts, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

4 Click [Next] in the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box.

5 Select the [Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)] check box, and then click [Next].

6 Select the [Specify location] check box, and then click [Next].

7 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

- ❒ When Auto Run starts, click **[Exit]**.
- ❒ To disable Auto Run, press the left **【Shift】** key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

8 Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver is stored.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:DRIVESRPCSWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 5e
  D:DRIVESPCL5EWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 6
  D:DRIVESPCL6WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:DRIVESPS3WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1

9 Check the printer driver location, and then click [OK].

10 Click [Next].

11 Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the “USB001” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

Note

❒ The number after “USB” varies depending on the number of printers connected.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - USB

Important

❒ Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the “USB” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the CD-ROM provided.

1 Check that the power of the printer is off.

2 Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

3 Turn on the power of the machine.

Found New Hardware Wizard starts, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

4 In the Found New Hardware Wizard display, click [Search for a suitable driver for my device [recommended]], and then click [Next >].

5 To disable Auto Run, press the left [SHIFT] key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

Note

❒ If Auto Run starts, click **[Cancel]**, and then **[Exit]**.

6 Select the [Include this location in the search] check box under [Search for the best driver in these location], and then click [Browse] to select the printer driver location.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:DRIVESRPCSWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 5e
  D:DRIVESPCL5EWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 6
  D:DRIVESPCL6WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:DRIVESPS3WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1

7 Check the printer driver location, and then click [Next].

8 Click [Continue].

9 Click [Finish].

If installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the “USB001” port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

Note

❒ The number after “USB” varies depending on the number of printers connected.

Troubleshooting USB

Problem	Solutions
The printer is not recognized automatically.	Turn off the power of the printer, reconnect the USB cable, and then turn it on again.

Windows has already configured the USB settings.	Open Windows' Device Manager, and then, under **[Universal Serial Bus controllers]**, remove any conflicting devices. Conflicting devices have a yellow **[!]** or **[?]** icon by them. Take care not to accidentally remove required devices. For details, see Windows Help. Note ❒ When using Windows 2000/XP or Windows Server 2003, an erroneous device is displayed under **[USB Controller]**in the **[Device Manager]** dialog box.

Printing with Parallel Connection

To use a printer connected using a parallel interface, click **[LPT1]** when installing the printer driver.

Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver

Important

❒ To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].**
5. **The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.**

   After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.
6. **Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Printer Program] dialog box.**

   You can select several printer drivers.
7. **Select the [Printer Name] check box to select the printer models you want to use.**

   The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.
8. **Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.**

   The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
9. **Check that [LPT1:] is shown in [Port:].**
10. **Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.**
11. **Click [Finish].**

The printer driver installation starts.

12 **Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.**

Note

❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

Reference

A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**. See p.77 “If a Message Appears during Installation”.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me)

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next].**

6 **Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next].**

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

7 **Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].**

8 **In the [Available ports:] box, click [Printer Port], and then click [Next].**

9 **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

10 **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**

11 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

Note

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next].

6 Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next].

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

7 Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].

8 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

9 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.

   Note

   ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next].**
6. **Click [Local Printer], and then click [Next].**
7. **Select the port you want to use, and then click [Next].**

   A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.
8. **Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].**
9. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].**
10. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**
11. **Restart the computer to complete installation.**

    Note

    ❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch “Setup.exe” on the CD-ROM root directory.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.

   Note

   ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next].**
6. **Select the port you want to use, and then click [Next].**

   A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.
7. **Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].**
8. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next].**
9. **Click [Next].**
10. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**
11. **Restart the computer to complete installation.**

    Note

    ❒ A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the Printer Driver Using IEEE 1394 (SCSI print)

The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

Important

- ❒ Quit all applications currently running, and do not print during installation.
- ❒ Do not connect IEEE 1394 or USB devices to the computer or turn on another printers during installation.
- ❒ Before uninstalling the printer driver, check that the IEEE 1394 interface cable is disconnected from the computer.
- ❒ SCSI print must be set to “active” from the control panel. For details, see p.147 “Host Interface Menu”.
- ❒ This printer can receive print data from one computer at a time only. An message may appear if jobs from different computers collide.
- ❒ If jobs collide, the first received is printed first.
- ❒ When the printer driver is properly installed, connecting or disconnecting the optional IEEE 1394 cable causes the printer icon to change.

Windows 2000

Note

- ❒ If **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** appears every time the computer is started or the cable is connected, disable the device. To install another printer driver after setting the “1394_00n” port, click [1394_00] as a port during the printer driver installation.
- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ The optional 1394 interface unit can be used only with Service Pack 1 (SP1) or higher.

1 Connect the printer and computer using the IEEE 1394 interface cable.

2 Click [Next] in the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box.

3 When the message “This wizard will complete the installation for this Device: Unknown” appears, click [Specify a location], and then click [Next >].

4 When the message “Locate Driver Files” appears, select the [Optional search locations] check box, and then click [Specify a location], and then click [Next >].

5 To disable Auto Run, press the left【SHIFT】key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

If Auto Run starts, click **[Cancel]**, and then **[Exit]**.

6 Click [Browse].

7 Select the printer driver you want to use.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:DRIVESRPCSWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 5e
  D:DRIVESPCL5EWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 6
  D:DRIVESPCL6WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:DRIVESPS3WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1

8 Click [Open].

9 Click [OK].

10 Follow the instructions.

When installation is complete, the printer connected to “1394_00n” appears in the **[Printers]** window. (“n” shows the number of printers connected.)

Note

❒ If the printer driver has already been installed, the printer icon is added to the **[Printers]** window. In this case, printer driver installation is not necessary.

❒ If printing does not work properly after the installation, delete the port and reinstall the printer driver. For details, see “Printer Does Not Print”, **Maintenance Guide**.

❒ If you do not want to install the printer when Found New Hardware Wizard starts under an operating system that supports SCSI print, disable the device by following the procedure below.

① When the **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears, click **[Next >]**.

② When the message “This wizard will complete the installation for this Device: Unknown” appears, select the **[Search for a suitable driver for my device [recommended]]** check box, and then click **[Next >]**.

③ When the message “Please choose your search and installation option.” appears, clear all check boxes from **[Search for the best driver in these locations.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.

④ When the message “Driver Files Search Results” appears, select the **[Disable the device. The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard in the control Panel can be able to complete the driver installations.]** check box, and then click **[Finish]**.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003

Important

❒ SCSI print must be set to “active” from the control panel. For details, see p.147 “Host Interface Menu”.

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

Note

❒ This printer can receive print data from one computer at a time only. If a job from a computer collides with other data, a message may appear on the computer.

❒ To install another printer driver after setting the “1394_00n” port, click **[1394_00]** as a port during the printer driver installation.

❒ When the printer driver is properly installed, connecting or disconnecting the optional IEEE 1394 cable causes the printer icon to change.

1 Connect the printer and computer using the IEEE 1394 interface cable.

When the **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears, check that **[This wizard helps you install software for: (Unknown)]** is displayed.

2 Select the [Install from a list on specific location (Advanced)] check box, and then click [Next >].

3 When the message “Please choose your search and installation option.” appears, select the [Search for the best driver in these locations.] check box, select the [Include this location in the search:] check box, and then select the [Include this location in the search:] check box.

4 To disable Auto Run, press the left【SHIFT】key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

Note

❒ If Auto Run starts, click **[Cancel]**, and then **[Exit]**.

5 Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver is stored, and then click [Next].

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS

D:DRIVESRPCSWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1

- PCL 5e
  D:DRIVESPCL5EWIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PCL 6
  D:DRIVESPCL6WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:DRIVESPS3WIN2K_XP(Language)DISK1

When installation is complete, the printer connected to “1394_00n” appears in the **[Printers and Faxes]** window. (“n” shows the number of printers connected.)

6 Follow the instructions.

Note

❒ If the printer driver has already been installed, the printer icon is added to the **[Printers and Faxes]** window. In this case, printer driver installation is not necessary.

❒ Even if the printer driver is already installed, the message “ Found New Hardware Wizard” may appear when the printer and the computer are connected using the IEEE 1394 interface cable for the first time. If it does, install the printer driver.

❒ If printing does not work properly after the installation, delete the port and reinstall the printer driver. For details, see “Printer Does Not Print”, **Maintenance Guide**.

❒ If you do not want to install the printer when Found New Hardware Wizard starts under an operating system that supports SCSI print, disable the device by following the procedure below

① When the **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears, check that **[This wizard helps you install software for: Unknown]** displayed, select **[Install from a list on specific location (Advanced)]** check box, and then click **[Next >]**.

② When the message “Please choose your search and installation option.” appears, clear all check boxes from **[Search for the best driver in these locations.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.

③ When the message “The wizard could not find the software on your computer for.” appears, click **[OK]**.

④ When the message “Cannot Install this Hardware” appears, select the **[Don't prompt again to install the software]** check box, and then click **[Finish]**.

Printing with Bluetooth Connection

Supported Profiles

❖ **SPP, HCRP**

- A maximum of two Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computers can be connected at the same time using the Bluetooth interface: one by SPP, one by HCRP.
- When connecting more than one Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computer at the same time, the first device that establishes connection is selected. When selecting the connection between the other devices, cancel the first established connection.
- Conditions for bidirectional communications
  - SPP connection does not support bidirectional communications.
  - HCRP connection supports bidirectional communications.

❖ **BIP**

- For BIP connection, a module including PostScript 3 must be installed in the printer.
- Only one Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computer can be connected via BIP.
- Only JPEG images that can be printed using BIP.
- User codes are disabled for BIP.
  You cannot print if print functions are restricted.
- Some printers do not support BIP.

Printing with Bluetooth Connection

To install the printer driver, follow the procedure used to install parallel interface.

Important

❒ To install the printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

Note

❒ System requirements vary depending on the Bluetooth standard and specifications. For details, see the manuals provided with each product.

❒ For information about setting up Bluetooth under other operating systems or using it with different utilities, see the manuals provided with those operating systems or utilities.

1 Start 3Com Bluetooth Connection Manager.

2 Check that the printer you want to use appears in 3Com Bluetooth Connection Manager.

3 On the [Tool] menu, click [COM port].

4 Check that the message "Bluetooth Serial Client (COMx) " appears under Client Ports. (X indicates the COM port number used by Bluetooth.)

5 Click [Close].

6 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

7 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

8 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

9 Click the [Ports] tab.

10 Under [Port], select the [COMx:] check box. X indicates the COM port number used by Bluetooth.

11 Click [OK].

Close the **[Printers]** window.

❖ **If a dialog box appears while transmitting a print job, reestablish network connection as follows:**

① Select the printer you want to use in the **[Printers and Faxes]** box.

② Click **[Connect]**.

Note

❒ To always use the same printer, select the **[Always use for this connection]** check box.

Reference

For details, see the manuals provided with the Bluetooth adaptor or computer equipped with Bluetooth.

Configuring Security Mode Settings

1 Start 3Com Bluetooth Connection Manager.

2 On the [Tools] menu, click [Security Mode].

The **[Security Mode]** dialog box appears.

3 Select the security mode in the [Security Mode:] list.

If you click **[High]**, or **[Custom]**, and specify **[Link]** in the **[Custom Settings]** dialog box, enter the Bluetooth password. For information about entering the password, see p.76 “Send the print job to the printer in use.”.

For all other security modes and custom settings, no password is required.

Note

❒ For information about each mode, see the manuals provided with the utility.

4 Click [OK].

Close the **[Security Mode]** dialog box.

Reference

For details about the security mode, see 3Com Bluetooth Connection Manager Help. For details about the password entry which is required to transmit print jobs, see p.76 “Printing in the Security Mode”.

Printing in the Security Mode

1 Send the print job to the printer in use.

Depending on the computer configuration, the **[Connect]** dialog box may appear. If it does, use it to establish the network connection.

2 The [Authentication] dialog box appears.

3 Enter the Bluetooth password, and then click [OK].

As the Bluetooth password, enter the last four digits of the printer's serial number. You can find the serial number on the label on the back of the printer. For example, if the serial number is 00A0-001234, the Bluetooth password is 1234.

4 The print job is sent.

Note

❒ The Bluetooth password differs for each printer and cannot be changed.

If a Message Appears during Installation

Message number 58 or 34 indicates the printer driver cannot be installed using Auto Run. Install the printer driver using **[Add Printer]** or **[>Install Printer]**.

For Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0:

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
2. **Double-click the Add Printer icon.**
3. **Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.**

Note

❒ If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the RPCS printer driver is either DRIVERSRPCSWIN9X_ME, DRIVERSRPCSWIN2K_XP, or DRIVERSRPCS T4. If the installer starts, click **[Cancel]** to quit.

For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003:

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**
2. **Click [Add a printer].**
3. **Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.**

Note

❒ If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the RPCS printer driver is DRIVERSRPCSWIN2K_XP. If the installer starts, click **[Cancel]** to quit.

For Windows XP Home Editions:

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].**
2. **Click [Printers and Other Hardware].**
3. **Click [Printers and Faxes].**
4. **Click [Install Printer].**
5. **Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.**

Note

❒ If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the RPCS printer driver is \DRIVERS\RPCS\WIN2K_XP. If the installer starts, click **[Cancel]** to quit.

Making Option Settings for the Printer

Make option settings for the printer using the printer driver when bidirectional communication is disabled.

Reference

For details about making option settings for the printer, see p.79 “If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled”.

Conditions for Bidirectional Communication

Bidirectional communication allows information about paper size and feed direction settings to be automatically sent to the printer. You can check printer status from your computer.

- Bidirectional communication is supported by Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0.
- If you use the RPCS printer driver and bidirectional communication is enabled under Windows 2000, the **[Change Accessories]** tab is unavailable.

Note

❒ The RPCS printer driver supports bidirectional communications and updates the printer status automatically.

❒ The PCL printer driver supports bidirectional communications. You can update printer status manually.

❒ The PostScript 3 printer driver does not support bidirectional communications.

To support bidirectional communication, the following conditions must be met:

❖ **When connected with parallel cables**

- The computer must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must support bidirectional communication.
- The interface cable must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must be connected to the computer using the standard parallel cables and parallel connectors.
- Under Windows 2000, **[Enable bidirectional support]** must be selected, and **[Enable printer pooling]** must not be selected on the **[Port]** tab with the RPCS printer driver.

❖ **When connected with the network**

- The printer must support bidirectional communication.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Client included on the CD-ROM must be installed, and TCP/IP must be used.

- Under Windows 2000, **[Enable bidirectional support]** must be selected, and **[Enable printer pooling]** must not be selected on the **[Port]** tab with the RPCS printer driver.
- In addition to the above, one of the following conditions must also be met:
  - The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port and the TCP/IP protocol must be used.
  - The standard TCP/IP port must be used without changing the default port name (for Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003).
  - Microsoft TCP/IP print IP address must be specified for use (for Windows NT 4.0).
  - IPP port name must include the IP address when using the IPP protocol.

❖ **When connected with IEEE 1394**

- The computer must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must be connected to the IEEE 1394 connector of a computer using the IEEE 1394 interface cable.
- **[Activate]** must be selected in the SCSI print of IEEE 1394 and **[Activate]** must be selected in the Bidi-SCSI print.
- Under Windows 2000/XP or Windows Server 2003, **[Enable bidirectional support]** must be selected, and **[Enable printer pooling]** must not be selected on the **[Port]** tab with RPCS printer driver.

❖ **When connected with USB**

The printer must be connected to the computer's USB port using the USB interface cable.
The computer must support bidirectional communication.

Note

❒ Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client from the CD-ROM provided.

If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled

Set up option settings when bidirectional communications are disabled.

Limitation

❒ Under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003, Manage Printers permission is required to change the printer properties in the **[Printers]** folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

❒ Under Windows NT 4.0, Full Control permission is required to change the printer properties in the **[Printers]** folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

4 Click the [Accessories] tab.

If options in the **[Change Accessories]** tab are disabled, bidirectional connection is enabled. In this case, no change is necessary for option settings.

Note

❒ If you are using the RPCS printer driver, click the **[Change Accessories]** tab.

❒ If you are using the PS printer driver, click the **[Device Settings]** tab.

5 Select options installed from the [Option] area, and then make the necessary settings.

6 Select the total amount of the memory in [Total Memory:], when the optional SDRAM module is added.

7 Under [Paper source tray settings], click and highlight the tray to be used, and then select the appropriate size, position, and type for the tray. Select the [Tray locking] check box to exclude the tray from the targets of automatic tray selection.

8 Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box. Click the [Defaults] tab, and then click [Change Accessories] to display the option selection.

Click **[OK]** to close the printer properties dialog box. Click the **[Defaults]** tab, and then click **[Change Accessories]** to display the option selection.

PCL - Accessing the Printer Properties

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

There are two methods to open the printer properties dialog box.

Making printer default settings

To make the printer default settings, open the printer properties dialog box from the **[Printers]** window.

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

   Note

   ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

   Reference

   For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the printer properties dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 95/98/Me.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].**

   The printer properties dialog box appears.

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

4. **Click [OK] to start printing.**

Copyright © 2004, 2005

Note

- ❒ The procedure to open the printer properties dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- ❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- ❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Printing Preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 2000.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

   The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

   The printer properties dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

   Note

   ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

   ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

   Reference

   For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Printing Preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

   The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**

   The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply] to start printing.**

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

The printer properties dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Default

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Document Defaults].**

The **[Default]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the printer properties dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows NT 4.0.

Note

- ❒ The procedure to open the printer properties dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- ❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- ❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

4 Click [OK] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

There are two dialog box types of the printer properties dialog box.

“Multi-tab” is used as an example in this manual. For details about changing the dialog box types, see the printer driver Help.

❖ **Multi-tab**
This dialog box type is designed for users who often change print settings to perform various printing operations.

❖ **Custom Setting**
This dialog box type is designed for users who rarely change print settings. This type of dialog box may vary depending on the installed options.

Making printer default settings

To make the printer default settings, open the printer properties dialog box from the **[Printers]** window.

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

Note

❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

Note

❒ When you open the printer properties dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the printer properties dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the printer properties dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 95/98/Me.

Note

- ❒ The procedure to open the printer properties dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- ❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- ❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

4 Click [OK] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

The printer properties dialog box appears.

Note

❒ When you open the printer properties dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the printer properties dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Printing Preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**

The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 2000.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**

3 **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply] to start printing.**

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2 **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3 **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

The printer properties dialog box appears.

Note

❒ When you open the printer properties dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the printer properties dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Printing Preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

Note

- ❒ When you open the printer properties dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the printer properties dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Default

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Document Defaults...].

The **[Default]** dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the printer properties dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows NT 4.0.

Note

- ❒ The procedure to open the printer properties dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- ❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- ❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [Apply].

4 Click [OK] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

PostScript 3 - Setting Up for Printing

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

There are two methods to open the printer properties dialog box.

Making printer default settings

To make the printer default settings, open the printer properties dialog box from the **[Printers]** window.

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

Note

❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

   The printer properties dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

5. **Click [OK].**

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the printer properties dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 95/98/Me.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the printer properties dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].**

   The printer properties dialog box appears.

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

4. **Click [OK] to start printing.**

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

   The printer properties dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Printing Preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**

   The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 2000.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.**

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Printing Preferences

Important

- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP.

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
   The **[Printers]** window appears .
2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**
3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
   The printer properties dialog box appears.
4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer default settings - Default

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the printer properties dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
   The **[Printers]** window appears.
2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**
3. **On the [File] menu, click [Document Defaults].**
   The **[Default]** dialog box appears.
4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the printer properties dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows NT 4.0.

Note

- ❒ The procedure to open the printer properties dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- ❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- ❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

1 On the [File] menu, click [Print].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

4 Click [OK] to start printing.

Reference

For details, see Printer Driver Help.

Mac OS - Setting Up for Printing

Making paper settings from an application

1 Open the file you want to print.

2 On the [File] menu, click [Page Setup].

3 Check that the printer you want to use is displayed in [Format for:], and then select the paper size you want to use in [Paper].

Under Mac OS X, select the paper size in **[Paper Size]**.

Note

- ❒ If the printer you want to use is not displayed in **[Format for:]**, select the printer you want to use.

Reference

The **[Page Setup]** dialog box varies depending on the application you use. For details, see the manuals provided with the Mac OS.

4 Configure the settings, and then click [OK].

Setting up for printing from an application

1 Open the file you want to print.

2 On the [File] menu, click [Print].

3 Check that the printer is selected in the [Printer] list, and then make the printer settings.

4 Configure the settings, and then click [OK].

Printing a PDF File Directly

You can send PDF files directly to this printer to print, without opening its application.

Important

- ❒ This is possible for Adobe PDF files only.
- ❒ PDF files of versions 1.3, 1.4, and 1.5 are supported.
- ❒ Transparency and JBIG2 which are functions of version 1.4 are not supported.
- ❒ Functions of 1.5 file format are not supported.

Using DeskTopBinder Lite

PDF files added with DeskTopBinder Lite can be sent directly to this printer for printing.

Important

- ❒ The RPCS printer driver must be installed.
- ❒ PDF Direct Print is not available with some versions of DeskTopBinder Lite. Use DeskTopBinder Lite installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

Note

- ❒ PDF Direct Print settings can be made from PDF Direct Print properties.
- ❒ To print password-protected PDF files, you must do the following:
  - Enter the PDF password using PDF Direct Print properties.
  - Using the control panel, press **[PDF: Change PW]** on the **[PDF Menu]** to set the PDF password.
- ❒ If a group password is set with DeskTopBinder Lite, set the group password by pressing **[PDF Group PW]** on the **[PDF Menu]** using the control panel.

Reference

For details, see DeskTopBinder Lite Help.

Installing DeskTopBinder Lite

Follow the procedure below to install DeskTopBinder Lite.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Copyright © 2004, 2005

Note

❒ Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch “Setup.exe” located on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

4 Click [DeskTopBinder Lite] , and then click [Next].

5 Follow the instructions on the display to install DeskTopBinder Lite.

If you are required to restart the computer after installing DeskTopBinder Lite, restart the computer and continue the configuration.

Using Commands

Under Windows and UNIX, you can print PDF files directly, using commands such as “ftp” and “lpr”.

Reference

For details about printing using commands under Windows, see p.245 “Printing Files Directly from Windows”.

For details about printing using commands under UNIX, see UNIX Supplement.

Sample Print

Use this function to print the first set of a multiple-set print job. After checking the results, the remaining sets can be printed using the control panel or Web Image Monitor. This function can protect you from printing a large quantity of misprints.

Important

- ❒ To use this function, the optional hard disk must be installed on the printer.
- ❒ The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At most, the printer can save 30 jobs or 1,100 pages for Sample Print and Locked Print. At most, the printer can store up to 1,000 pages for 1 job.
- ❒ If you turn off the power, the job saved on the hard disk will be deleted.
- ❒ Sample Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been executed or deleted using the Web browser before you select “Sample Print“ from the control panel.
- ❒ Sample Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select **[Sample Print]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Sample Print files.

Note

- ❒ You can identify the file you want to print by the user ID and the time when the job was stored.
- ❒ If the first set of the Sample Print file is not as you expected and you do not want to print the remaining sets, delete the Sample Print file using the control panel or Web Image Monitor.
- ❒ The job in the printer is deleted automatically after all Sample Print files are printed.
- ❒ Follow the procedure below to use this function with the PCL or RPCS printer driver under Windows. If you want to use this function under Mac OS, see p.261 “Using PostScript 3”.

Reference

For details about settings for the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

Files specified for Sample Print can be printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Printing the First Set

1 From an application, select a command to print.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].**

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3 **In the [Job Type:] box, click [Sample Print].**

4 **In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric characters.**

This is used to identify the user. The user ID can be entered using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

5 **Execute a command to print.**

The job is saved on the hard disk.

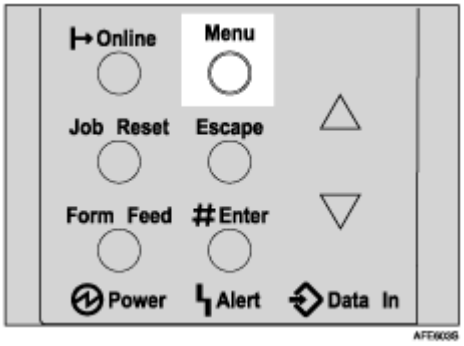
6 **Check the print job, and then use the control panel to print the remaining sets or delete them.**

Reference

p.107 “Printing the Remaining Sets”
p.108 “Deleting a Sample Print File”

Printing the Remaining Sets

1 **Press the 【Menu】 key.**



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Sample Print], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.**

The user ID and the time when the job was stored appear.

3 **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display the file you want to print, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.**

4 **Check that [Print File] is displayed, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.**

The number of remaining sets appears.

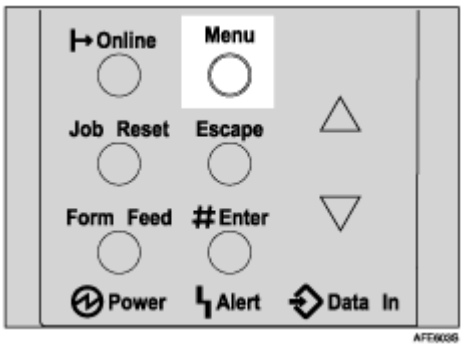
To cancel printing, press the 【Escape】 key.

5 Press the 【# Enter】 key. To change the number of sets you want to print, press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key and select the number of sets, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

After the job is printed, the job saved on the hard disk is deleted.

Deleting a Sample Print File

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Sample Print], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display the file you want to delete, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Delete File], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

To cancel deleting a Sample Print file, press the 【Escape】 key.

5 Press the 【# Enter】 key to delete the file.

The message **[Deleted]** appears.

6 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

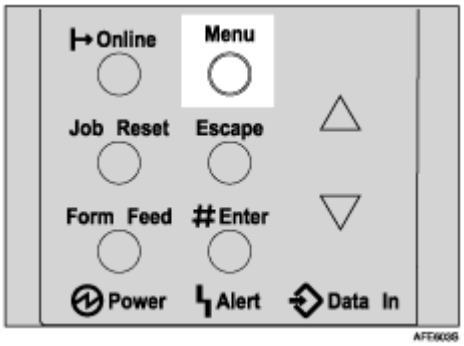
Checking the Error Log

When a print job is not saved on the hard disk, it remains in the error log and can be checked using the control panel.

Important

- ❒ The latest 50 error files are stored in the error log. If a new error file is added when there are 50 error files already stored, the oldest file is deleted. However, if the oldest error file is a sample print file, it is not deleted, but stored instead in the sample print error log until the number of sample print error files reaches 20.
- ❒ If you turn off the power, the logs will be deleted.

1 Press the [Menu] key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Sample Print], and then press the [# Enter] key.

The user ID and the time when the job was stored appear.

3 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Error File(s)], and then press the [# Enter] key.

4 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to check the log.

To print error files, either print or delete the file saved on the hard disk, and then print the file from the computer again.

5 When you finish checking the error log, press the [Escape] key.

The Sample Print job selection screen appears.

6 Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

Locked Print

Use this function to print confidential documents. Documents will not be printed automatically unless a password is entered using the control panel.

Important

- ❒ To use this function, the optional hard disk must be installed on the printer.
- ❒ The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the print image content. At most, the printer can store 30 jobs or 1,100 pages for Sample Print and Locked Print. At most, the printer can store a maximum of 1,000 pages for a single job.
- ❒ If you turn off the power, the job saved on the hard disk will be deleted.
- ❒ Locked Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select **[Locked Print]** using the control panel.
- ❒ Locked Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected **[Locked Print]** using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Locked Print files.
- ❒ Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 30 Sample Print and Locked Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
  - When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 1,000 pages.

Note

- ❒ You can identify the file you want to print by the user ID and the time when the job was stored.
- ❒ After the Locked Print file is printed, the job in the printer is deleted automatically.
- ❒ Follow the procedure below to use this function with the PCL or RPCS printer driver under Windows. If you want to use this function under Mac OS, see p.261 “Using PostScript 3”.

Reference

For details about settings for the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

Files specified for Locked Print can be printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Sending Print Job to the Printer

1 From an application, select a command to print.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].**

3. **In the [Job Type:] box, click [Locked Print].**

4. **In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric characters.**

   This is used to identify the user. The user ID can be entered using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

5. **In the [Password:] box, enter a four to eight digit password (0-9).**

   In the basic model, enter a four digit password (0-9).

6. **Execute a command to print.**

   The job is saved on the hard disk.

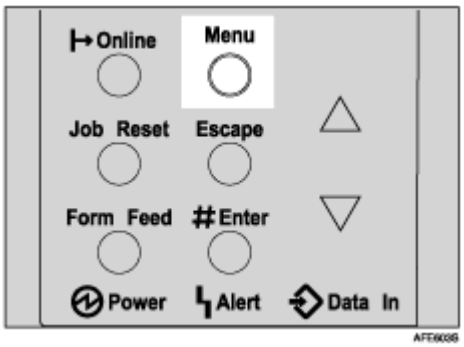
7. **Enter the password using the control panel, and then specify whether to print or delete the job.**

Reference

p.111 “Entering a Password”
p.112 “Deleting a Locked Print File”

Entering a Password

1. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**



   The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Locked Print], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.**

   The user ID and the time when the job was stored appear.

3. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display the file you want to print, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.**

4 **Enter the password. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the leftmost digit of the password, and then press the [# Enter] key.**

5 **The next digit appears.**

6 **Repeat steps to enter all the digits of the password, and then press the [# Enter] key.**

7 **Check that [Print File] is displayed, and then press the [# Enter] key.**

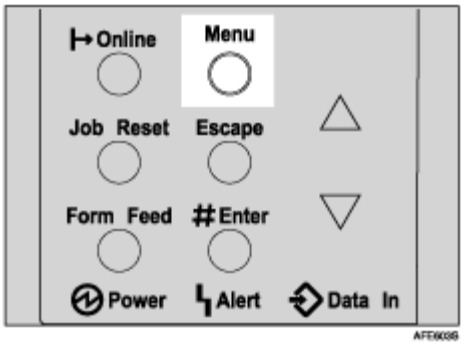
To cancel printing, press the **[Escape]** key.

8 **Press the [# Enter] key.**

After the job is printed, the job saved on the hard disk is deleted.

Deleting a Locked Print File

1 **Press the [Menu] key.**



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 **Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Locked Print], and then press the [# Enter] key.**

3 **Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display the file you want to delete.**

4 **Enter the password of the Locked Print file. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the leftmost digit of the password, and then press the [# Enter] key.**

5 **The next digit appears.**

6 **Repeat steps to enter all the digits of the password, and then press the [# Enter] key.**

7 **Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Delete File], and then press the [# Enter] key.**

To cancel deleting a Locked Print file, press the **[Escape]** key.

8 **Press the [# Enter] key.**

The message **[Deleted]** appears, and then the Locked Print job selection screen appears.

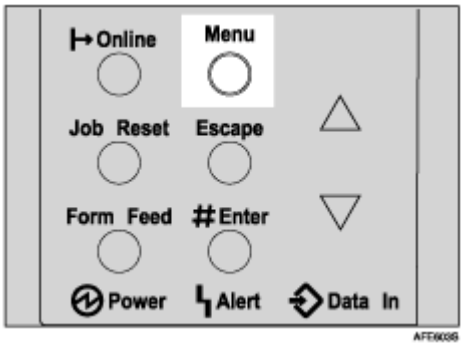
Checking the Error Log

When a print job is not saved on the hard disk, it remains in the error log and can be checked using the control panel.

Important

- The latest 50 error files are stored in the error log. If a new error file is added when there are 50 error files already stored, the oldest file is deleted. However, if the oldest error file is a sample print file, it is not deleted, but stored instead in the sample print error log until the number of sample print error files reaches 20.
- If you turn off the power, the logs will be deleted.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Locked Print], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

The user ID and the time when the job was stored appear.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Error File(s)], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to check the log.

To print error files, either print or delete the file saved on the hard disk, and then print the file from the computer again.

5 When you finish checking the error log, press the 【Escape】 key.

The Locked Print job selection screen appears.

6 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Form Feed

This message appears when the paper tray is empty, or when the paper in the paper tray is not of the same size or form as that specified by the printer driver. You can form feed using tray.

1 Press the【Form Feed】key, and then select the paper tray on the screen.

2 Press the【# Enter】key.

The job is printed from the selected tray.

Canceling a Print Job

You can cancel printing from either the printer or a client computer. Since canceling procedures vary depending on the print job status, check the job status and cancel printing according to the following procedure.

Windows - Canceling a Print Job

Important

❒ When the printer is connected to multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel other users' print jobs.

If the print job you want to cancel is being printed

1 Check if the print job you want to cancel is currently being printed.

While the print job may not be being printed, the printer is receiving data if the Data In indicator is lit or blinking.

2 Press the 【Job Reset】 key.

The **[Job Reset?]** screen appears.

3 Select the current job or all jobs (including the current job) using the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key.

It is also possible to annul the cancellation. Printing resumes if you select **[Resume Print]**, and then press the **【# Enter】** key.

4 Press the 【# Enter】 key.

A confirmation message appears.

Printing resumes if you press the **【Escape】** key after the message appears.

5 Press the 【# Enter】 key.

The job is canceled. When the cancellation procedure is complete, a message appears.

Note

❒ A print job that contains a large volume of data may take considerable time to cancel.

❒ If printing resumes after being canceled, the period of time set for **[I/O Timeout]** is too short. Set a longer period of time for **[I/O Timeout]** on the **[Host Interface]** menu.

If the print job you want to cancel is not being printed

1 Double-click the printer icon on the Windows task tray.

A window appears showing all print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

You can also open the print job queue window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **[Printer]** window.

2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel.

3 On the [Document] menu, click [Cancel Printing].

Note

❒ When this printer is used as a network printer, other users' print jobs cannot be canceled from a client computer.

❒ Clicking **[Purge Print Documents]** on the **[Printer]** menu deletes all currently queued print jobs. However, when this printer is used as a network printer, print jobs from other users' computer cannot be canceled from a client computer.

❒ When the print job you selected starts printing, it takes some time before the print job disappears from the printer window.

Mac OS - Canceling a Print Job

Important

❒ When the printer is connected to multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel other users' print jobs.

If the print job you want to cancel is being printed

1 Check if the print job you want to cancel is currently being printed.

While the print job may not be being printed, the printer is receiving data if the Data In indicator is lit or blinking.

2 Press the [Job Reset] key.

[Job Reset?] screen appears.

3 Select the current job or all jobs (including the current job) using the [▲] or [▼] key.

It is also possible to annul the cancellation. Printing resumes if you select **[Resume Print]**, and then press **[# Enter]** key.

4 Press the [# Enter] key.

A confirmation message appears.

Printing resumes if you press the 【**Escape**】 key after the message appears.

5 Press the 【# Enter】 key.

The job is canceled. When the cancellation procedure is complete, a message appears.

Note

❒ A print job that contains a large volume of data may take considerable time to cancel.

❒ If printing resumes after being canceld, the period of time set for **[I/O Timeout]** is too short. Set a long period of time for **[I/O Timeout]** on the **[Host Interface]** menu.

If the print job you want to cancel is not being printed

---

1 Double-click the printer icon on the desktop.

A window appears showing all print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

Under Mac OS X, start Print Center.

2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel.

3 Click the pause icon, and then click the trash icon.

Note

❒ When this printer is used as a network printer, other users' print jobs cannot be canceled from a client computer.

Caution During Printing

Collate

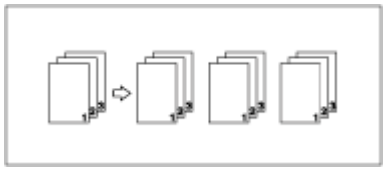
The Collate function allows you to print while sorting printouts into page-ordered sets, such as when printing multiple copies of meeting materials.

Important

- ❒ To use these functions, an optional memory unit of at least 256 MB or the optional hard disk drive must be installed on the printer.
- ❒ Up to 150 pages can be sorted using RAM. If the optional hard disk drive is installed, up to 1,000 pages can be sorted.

❖ **Collate**

Output can be assembled as sets in sequential order.



Reference

For details about collate, see the printer driver Help.

Spool Printing

With Spool Printing, the print data is saved in the hard disk before printing.

Important

- ❒ Do not turn off the printer or the computer when a print job is being spooled and the **Data In** indicator is blinking. The print job will remain in the hard disk and be printed when the printer is turned on. The setting can be changed using the “spoolsw clear job” command on the telnet.
- ❒ The Spool Printing function is available for data received using lpr and ipp.
- ❒ The domain reserved for spool printing is about 1 GB.
- ❒ When Spool Printing is on, the size of a single print job cannot exceed 500 MB.
- ❒ When sending print jobs spooled from several computers, up to 10 lpr jobs, and one ipp job, can be spooled. Jobs exceeding this spooling capacity cannot be executed. It is necessary to wait to add new jobs.

Note

- ❒ First page takes longer to print when using spool printing.

❒ With Spool Printing, the computer is freed from print processing earlier, even when processing a large amount of data.

❒ Spool jobs stored in the printer can be viewed or deleted using Web Image Monitor.

Reference

For information about the “spoolsw clear job” command on the telnet, see p.202 “spoolsw”.

Setting Spool Printing

Spool printing settings can be made using telnet or Web Image Monitor.

- Using Web Image Monitor
  In **[System]** on **[Device Settings]** of the **[Configuration]** menu, click **[Enable]** in **[Spool Printing]**.
  For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- Using telnet
  Enter “spoolsw spool on”.
  For details, see p.202 “spoolsw”.

Checking or deleting spooled jobs using Web Image Monitor

Follow the procedure below to check or delete spooled jobs using Web Image Monitor.

1 Open a Web browser.

2 Enter “http: //(printer's address)/” in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3 Click [Login].

The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

4 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

To use the default account, enter “admin” as user name, and leave the password blank.

5 In the menu area, click [Job].

A submenu will appear.

6 On the [Printer] menu, click [Spool Printing].

A list of spooled jobs appears.

7 To delete a job, select the check box of the job you want to delete, and then click [Delete].

The selected job is deleted.

8 Quit Web Image Monitor.

Reference

For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Cover

Using this function, you can insert cover fed from a different tray to that of the main paper, and print on them.

Important

❒ To use this function, Collate must be set.

Note

❒ The cover sheets should be the same size and orientation as the body of the paper.

❒ If Auto Tray Select is set as the paper feed tray for the body paper, the paper will be delivered from a tray containing paper from a tray containing paper in the portrait direction. Therefore, if the cover paper is set to landscape orientation, the orientation cover and body will be different.

Reference

For printing methods, see the printer driver Help.

Memory Capacity and Paper Size

Additional memory apart from standard memory may be required depending on the paper size and data type.

Note

❒ When printing from bypass tray, duplex printing will not be supported regardless of the memory capacity, and only one-side will be printed.

One-sided printing (600 x 600 dpi)

❖ **128 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, Legal and maximum custom sized paper printing is guaranteed.

❖ **256 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, Legal and maximum custom sized paper printing is guaranteed.

One-sided printing (1200 x 1200 dpi)

❖ **128 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, and Legal sized paper printing is guaranteed.
- Maximum custom sized paper can be printed.

❖ **256 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, Legal and maximum custom sized paper printing is guaranteed.

Duplex printing (600 x 600 dpi)

❖ **128 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, Legal and maximum custom sized paper printing is guaranteed.

❖ **256 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, Legal and maximum custom sized paper printing is guaranteed.

Duplex printing (1200 x 1200 dpi)

❖ **128 MB**

- A6, A5 and B5 JIS sized paper printing is guaranteed.
  A4, Letter, Legal and maximum custom sized paper can be printed.

❖ **256 MB**

- A6, A5, B5 JIS, A4, Letter, and Legal sized paper printing is guaranteed.
- Maximum custom sized paper can be printed.

Menu Chart

This section explains how to change the default settings of the printer and provides information about the parameters included in each menu.

❖ Sample Print

Note

❒ Appear only when the optional hard disk is installed.

❒ For details, see p.106 “Sample Print”.

❖ Locked Print

Note

❒ Appear only when the optional hard disk is installed.

❒ For Details, see p.110 “Locked Print”.

❖ Paper Input

Menu
Bypass Size
Tray Paper Size
Paper Type
Tray Locking
Tray Priority

❖ List/Test Print

Menu
Config.P/Er.Log
Config. Page
Error Log
Menu List
PCL Config.Page
PS Config. Page
PS Font List
PDF Config.Page
Hex Dump

❖ Maintenance

Menu
Image Density

Copyright © 2004, 2005

Menu
Registration
Curl Prevention
HD Format
WL.LAN Signal
WL.LAN Defaults
Key Repeat
Menu Protect
List Print Lock
Ppr.Size Errors
File Locking
Unlock Files

❖ System

Menu
Prt. Err Report
Auto Continue
Memory Overflow
Copies
Printer Lang.
Sub Paper Size
Page Size
Edge-Edge Print
Def.Print Lang.
Duplex
Blank Pages
Energy Saver
Auto Reset Time
Memory Usage
Unit of Measure
Edge Smoothing
Toner Saving
Spool Printing
Letterhead Mode
Bypass Priority
RAM Disk

Menu
Notify by Email
Email Date

Note

❒ **[Spool Printing]** appears when the optional hard disk is installed.

❒ **[RAM Disk]** will not appear when the optional hard disk is installed.

❖ Host Interface

Menu
I/O Buffer
I/O Timeout
Network Setup
IEEE 1394 Setup
IEEE 802.11b
USB Setting
Bluetooth

Note

❒ **[IEEE 1394 Setup]** appears when the optional IEEE 1394 interface board is installed.

❒ **[IEEE 802.11b]** appears when the optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❖ PCL Menu

Menu
Orientation
Form Lines
Font Source
Font Number
Point Size
Font Pitch
Symbol Set
Courier Font
Ext. A4 Width
Append CR to LF
Resolution

❖ PS Menu

Menu
Data Format
Resolution

❖ PDF Menu

Menu
PDF: Change PW
PDF Group PW
Resolution

❖ Language

Menu
English
German
French
Italian
Dutch
Swedish
Norwegian
Danish
Spanish
Finnish
Portuguese
Czech
Polish
Hungarian

Paper Input Menu

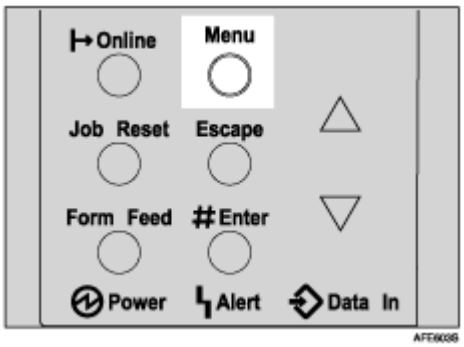
This section explains about paper settings on the Paper Input menu such as paper sizes and types on each tray.

Changing the paper input menu

Tray Locking

Follow the procedure below to lock/unlock trays.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Paper Input], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Tray Locking], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display the tray to unlock, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

5 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Off], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[Paper Input]** screen appears.

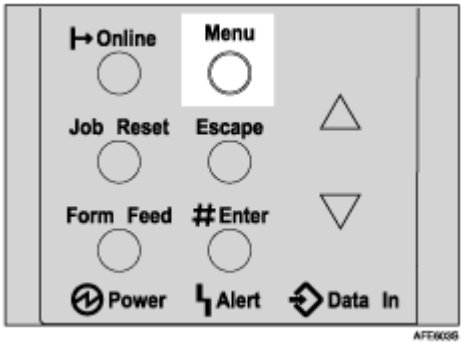
6 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Tray Priority

Follow the procedure below to change the tray priority.

1 Press the [Menu] key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Paper Input], and then press the [# Enter] key.

3 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Tray Priority], and then press the [# Enter] key.

4 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a tray you want to use.

5 Press the [# Enter] key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[Paper Input]** screen appears.

6 Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

Paper Input menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Paper Input menu.

❖ **Bypass Size**

You can specify the paper size for Bypass tray.
For details about the size of paper loaded in the bypass tray, see “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”, Maintenance Guide.

❖ **Tray Paper Size**

Paper size for tray 1, 2, 3
When you select sizes that are not indicated on the paper size dial of tray 1, tray 2 or tray 3, you should set the dial to “✳”, and then select the paper size here.
For details about the size of paper loaded in each tray, see “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”, Maintenance Guide.

Note

❒ Only the installed trays appear on the display panel.

❖ **Paper Type**

If you use various types of paper, select the paper type for tray 1, tray 2, tray 3 or bypass tray.
For details about types of paper loaded in each tray, see “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”, Maintenance Guide.

❖ **Tray 1, 2, 3**

Plain Paper, Recycled Paper, Special Paper, Color Paper, Letterhead, Preprinted

❖ **Bypass Tray**

Plain Paper, Recycled Paper, Special Paper, Color Paper, Letterhead, Preprinted, Transparency, Thick Paper

Note

❒ Default : Plain Paper

❒ Only the installed trays appear on the display panel.

❖ **Tray Locking**

If you use various types of paper, you can lock a tray to prevent printing on different types of paper such as letterhead or colored paper. When **[Auto Tray Select]** is selected in **[Paper Source]** from the printer driver, the locked tray is not used. You can select each tray set to on or off.

Note

❒ Default : Off

❒ Only installed trays appear on the display panel.

❒ You cannot lock multiple trays.

❒ If you need to have a tray locked, you must select the tray using printer driver.

❒ When a locked tray is selected from the printer driver, the printer does not search for another tray.

❖ **Tray Priority**

You can set a tray to be checked first when **[Auto Tray Select]** is selected in **[Paper Source]** from the printer driver.

- Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Bypass Tray

Note

❒ Default : Tray 1

❒ Only installed trays appear on the display panel.

❒ It is recommended that you load paper of the size and orientation you use most frequently in the tray selected in **[Tray Priority]**.

List/Test Print Menu

You can print lists of configurations on printer or the paper printings.
Also, you can check the types and characters of all the printable fonts.

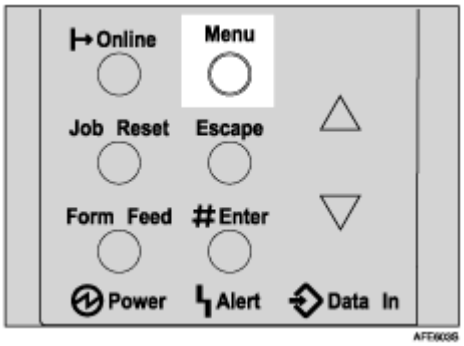
Printing a Configuration Page

Follow the procedure below to print the configuration page.

Important

❒ The configuration page is printed on A4 or Letter (8 1/2 x 11) size paper, so load them in the same paper tray.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [List/Test Print], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [Config. Page], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

The configuration page is printed. The test print menu screen returns on completion of printing.

4 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Interpreting the configuration page

❖ **System Reference**

❖ **Printer ID**
The serial number assigned to the board by its manufacturer is displayed.

❖ **Firmware Version**

- Firmware
  The version number of the printer controller firmware is displayed.
- Engine
  The version number of the printer engine firmware is displayed.
- NCS
  The version number of the network interface board is displayed.

❖ **Pages Printed**
The total number of pages printed by the printer to date is displayed.

❖ **Total Memory**
The total amount of SDRAM installed on the printer is displayed.

❖ **Controller Option**
The items are displayed when the controller options are installed.

❖ **Printer Language**
The version number of the printer language is displayed.

❖ **Options**
The options installed are displayed.

❖ **Consumption Status**
The amount of toner remaining is displayed.

❖ **Paper Input**
Settings made on the **[Paper Input]** menu are displayed.

Reference

For details, see p.126 “Paper Input Menu”.

❖ **Maintenance**
Settings made on the **[Maintenance]** menu are displayed.

Reference

For details, see p.133 “Maintenance Menu”.

❖ **System**
Settings made on the **[System]** menu are displayed.

Reference

For more information, see p.139 “System Menu”.

❖ **Host Interface**
Settings made on the **[Host Interface]** menu are displayed.
When DHCP is active on the network, the IP address, subnet mask and gateway address appear in parentheses on the configuration page.

Reference

For details, see p.147 “Host Interface Menu”.

❖ **PCL Menu**
Settings made on the **[PCL Menu]** are displayed.

Reference

For details, see p.154 “PCL Menu”.

❖ **PS Menu**
Settings made on the **[PS Menu]** are displayed.

Reference

For details, see p.157 “PS Menu”.

❖ **PDF Menu**
Settings made on the **[PDF Menu]** are displayed.

Reference

For details, see p.159 “PDF Menu”.

❖ **Interface Information**
Interface information is displayed.

List/Test Print menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the List/Test Print menu.

❖ **Config.P/Er.Log**
You can print the configuration page and error log.

❖ **Config. Page**
You can print the current configuration of the printer.

❖ **Error Log**
You can print an error report.

❖ **Menu List**
You can print a menu list showing all available menus.

❖ **PCL Config.Page**
You can print the current PCL configuration.

❖ **PS Config. Page**
You can print an installed PS font and the Disk Directory List which shows the optional hard disk.

Note

❒ Appear only at network standard model.

❖ **PS Font List**

You can print the current configuration and installed PS font list of PostScript.

Note

❒ Appear only at basic model.

❖ **PDF Config.Page**

You can print an installed PS3 font and the Disk Directory List which shows the optional hard disk.

❖ **Hex Dump**

You can print the data sent by the computer using Hex Dump.

Maintenance Menu

You can set printing conditions such as density and calibration, and printer management such as formatting the optional hard disk unit.

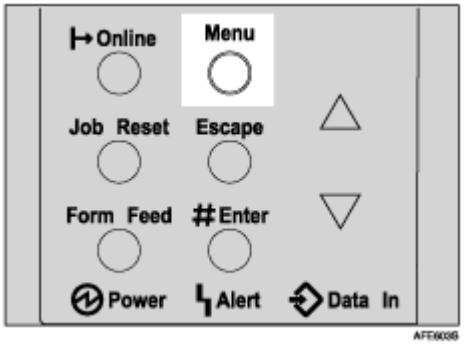
Changing the maintenance menu

This section explains changing the maintenance menu using examples.

HD Format

Follow the procedure below to format the optional hard disk unit after initial setup.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [Maintenance], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [HD Format], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Read the HD format confirmation message, and then press the 【# Enter】 key to start formatting.

The optional hard disk unit is formatted, and the rebooting message appears.

5 Turn off the printer's power. After a few seconds, turn the power on again.

The optional hard disk unit is now formatted and ready to use.s

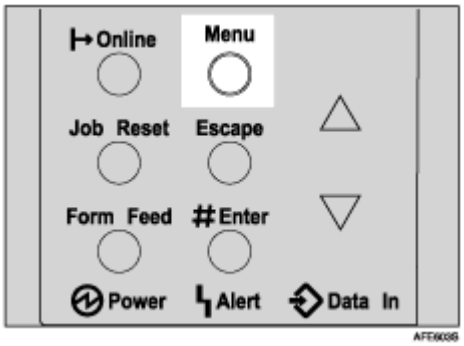
Note

❒ If the **[HD Format]** button is not displayed, the optional hard disk unit is not properly installed. Reinstall the optional hard disk unit. For details about the optional hard disk unit, see Setup Guide. If you cannot install it properly even after attempting reinstallation, contact your sales or service representative.

Displaying the signal strength

Follow the procedure below to check the IEEE 802.11b (wireless LAN) signal on the **[Maintenance]** menu.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [Maintenance], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [WL.LAN Signal], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Check the display for result.

4 Press the 【Escape】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Note

❒ If **[WL.LAN Signal]** is not displayed, **[IEEE 802.11b]** has not been selected for **[LAN Type]** in **[Network Setup]** on the **[Host Interface]** menu. Select **[IEEE 802.11b]** for **[LAN Type]**, and then check that **[WL.LAN Signal]** is displayed on the **[Maintenance]** menu again.

❒ Signal status can be measured in **[Infrastructure]** under **[Comm. Mode]** of the wireless LAN. If **[Ad hoc]** or **[802.11 Ad hoc]** is selected in **[Comm. Mode]**, signal status cannot be measured. To measure signal status, select **[Comm. Mode]** in **[Infrastructure]** under **[IEEE 802.11b]** on the **[Host Interface]** menu.

❒ Every time you press the 【# Enter】 key, the signal is updated.

❒ The signal is rated **[Good]** if signal strength is 86%-100%, **[Fair]** if 61%-85%, **[Poor]** if 31%-60%, and **[Unavailable]** if 0%-30%. If the signal is unstable or unavailable, remove any obstructions or move the printer to a place to receive the signal.

❒ Using wireless devices or microwave sources nearby will affect the signal transmission.

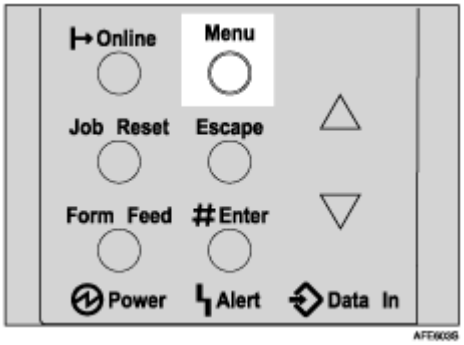
Resetting the IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN) Settings

Follow the procedure below to reset the wireless LAN setting on the **[Maintenance]** menu.

Important

❒ **[Comm. Mode]**, **[Channel]**, **[Trans. Speed]**, **[WEP Setting]**, and **[SSID]** can be selected on the **[Host Interface]** menu.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [Maintenance], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to display [WL.LAN Defaults], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【# Enter】 key.

The wireless LAN setting is reset.

After about three seconds, the initial screen appears.

Maintenance menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Maintenance menu.

❖ **Image Density**

You can select the print image density.

- -3 to 3

Reference

For details, see “Adjusting the Image Density”, **Maintenance Guide**.

❖ **Registration**

You can adjust the starting position of the printing page.

❖ **Prt. Test Sheet**

You can print the registration sets sheet.

- Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Bypass Tray, Duplex.BackSide

Note

❒ Only the installed trays appear on the display panel.

❖ **Adjustment**

You can select the start position for printing on a page.

- Horiz: Tray 1, Horiz: Tray 2, Horiz: Tray 3, Horiz: Bypass, Horiz:Dup.Back, Vert.:All Trays, Vert.:Dup.Back
- -4.0 to +4.0

Note

❒ Only the installed trays appear on the display panel.

❖ **Curl Prevention**

You can control the fuser temperature to prevent paper from curling.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ Use this mode only when paper misfeed occurs frequently during duplex printing.

❖ **HD Format**

You can format the hard disk when the optional hard disk is installed.

Reference

For details about formatting the hard disk, see “Attaching the Hard Disk Drive Type 4000”, **Setup Guide**.

❖ **WL.LAN Signal**

You can check the signal strength when using wireless LAN.

Reference

For details about displaying the signal strength, see p.134 “Displaying the signal strength”.

❖ **WL.LAN Defaults**

Reset the wireless LAN to default. The menu appears when the 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❖ **Key Repeat**

Holding down **[On]** allows users to scroll through items and settings. Pressing **[Off]** moves through items and settings one at a time.

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **Menu Protect**

This procedure protects menu settings from accidental changes. A key operation is required to change menu settings. In a network environment, only network administrators can change menu settings.

- Level 1
- Level 2
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[Menu Protect]** on the display panel.

❒ You can preserve settings for the **[Maintenance]**, **[System]**, **[Host Interface]**, and **[Language]** menus on Level 1.

❒ You can preserve settings for the **[Paper Input]**, **[Maintenance]**, **[System]**, **[Host Interface]**, and **[Language]** menus on Level 2.

❖ **List Print Lock**

Disable users to print the lists or reports in List/Test Print Menu or other test prints.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ Appear only at network standard model.

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[List Print Lock]** from the display panel.

❖ **Ppr.Size Errors**

You can select whether to have an error report printed when the paper size setting for the tray differs from the actual size of the paper in the tray. You can also select whether to have an error message displayed when feeding paper from the tray.

- Detect
- Do not detect

Note

❒ Default: Detect

❒ When it is “Detect”, it prints with the paper size that was set when the error message appeared.

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[List Print Lock]** from the display panel.

❖ **File Locking**

If the user tries to access a file and enters the wrong password 10 times, the file is automatically locked.s

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ Appear only at network standard model.

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[File Locking]** from the display panel.

❖ **Unlock Files**

You can unlock a file that was locked because a user entered the wrong password 10 times.

Note

❒ Appear only at network standard model.

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[Unlock Files]** from the display panel.

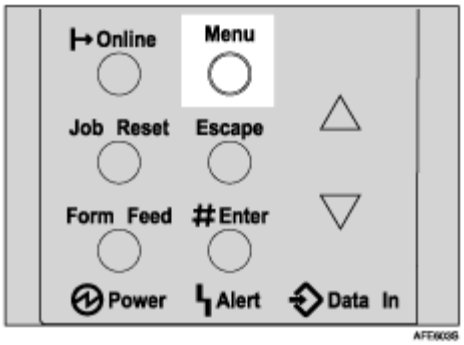
System Menu

You can set basic functions required to use the printer. The printer can be used on factory default, but the configuration can be changed depending on the condition of the user. The changed condition holds even if the printer is turned off.

Changing the system menu

Follow the procedure below to change the settings for Energy Saver Timer.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [System], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Energy Saver], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [E. Saver Timer], and then enter 【# Enter】 Key

5 Press 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the lead time needed to switch to the Energy Saver mode.

6 Press the 【# Enter】 key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[Energy Saver]** screen appears.

7 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

System menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the System menu.

❖ **Prt. Err Report**
You can select **[On]** or **[Off]** to have an error report printed when a printer error or memory error occurs.

- Off
- On

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Auto Continue**
You can make the Auto Continue setting. When set to on, printing continues after a system error occurs.

- Off
- Immediate
- 1 minute
- 5 minutes
- 10 minutes
- 15 minutes

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ When set to on and certain errors occur, the current job may be canceled, and the printer automatically perform the next queued job.

❖ **Memory Overflow**
You can specify whether or not to print a memory overflow error report.

- Do not print
- Error Info.

Note

❒ Default: Do not print

❖ **Copies**
You can specify the number of pages to print.
This setting is disabled if the number of pages to print is specified by command or the printer driver.

- 1-999

❖ **Printer Lang.**
You can specify the printer language.

- Auto Detect
- PCL
- PS
- PDF

Note

❒ Default: Auto Detect

❖ **Sub Paper Size**

You can select **[Off]** or **[Auto]** to enable the Sub Paper Size function. When you select **[Auto]**, the printer uses an alternative paper size if the currently specified paper is not loaded. When you select **[Off]**, the printer uses any size paper in the current specified paper tray.

- Off
- Auto

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Page Size**

You can specify the default paper size.
8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 14$, 8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 11$, 5 $^{1}/_{2} \times 8$ $^{1}/_{2}$, 7 $^{1}/_{4} \times 10$ $^{1}/_{2}$, 8 × 13, 8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 13$, 8 $^{1}/_{4} \times 13$, A4 (210 × 297), B5 JIS(182 × 257), A5 (148 × 210), A6 (105 × 148), 16K (195 × 267), 4 $^{1}/_{8} \times 9$ $^{1}/_{2}$, 3 $^{7}/_{8} \times 7$ $^{1}/_{2}$, C5 Env(162 × 229), C6 Env(114 × 162), DL Env(110 × 220), Custom Size.

Note

❒ Default:

- Metric version: A4
- Inch version: 8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 11$

❒ The initial paper size is applied when the paper size is not specified in the print data.

❖ **Edge-Edge Print**

You can print on the complete area of an A4 sheet leaving no border on any egde.

- Off
- On

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Def.Print Lang.**

You can specify the initial printer language if the machine cannot detect the printer language.

- PCL
- PS
- PDF

Note

❒ Default: PCL

❖ **Duplex**

You can specify whether or not to print on both sides of a sheet.

- Off
- Short Edge Bind
- Long Edge Bind

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ This menu appears only when the optional duplex unit is installed.

❖ **Blank Pages**

You can specify whether or not to print blank pages.

- Do not print
- Print

Note

❒ Default: Print

❒ Appears only at network standard model.

❖ **Energy Saver**

You can specify how many minutes for the energy saver mode.

❖ **E.Saver On/Off**

You can specify whether or not to switch E. Saver.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❒ When the printer switches to the Energy Saver mode, the Power indicator goes off, while the online indicator stays lit.

❖ **E. Saver Timer**

You can select the lead time needed to switch to the Energy Saver mode. The Energy Saver mode reduces electric power consumption.

- 1 minute
- 5 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes
- 45 minutes
- 60 minutes

Note

❒ Default: 15 minutes

❒ When the printer switches to the Energy Saver mode, the Power indicator goes off, while the Online indicator stays lit and **[Energy Save Mode]** appears.

❖ **Auto Reset Time**

You can set On or Off and the time for the Auto Reset Timer.

Note

❒ Appears only at network standard model.

❖ **Auto Reset**

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **Set Time**

- 10 to 999sec by 1sec.

Note

❒ Default: 60 sec

❖ **Memory Usage**

You can select memory to be used from “Font Priority” or “Frame Priority” according to the paper size, resolution or printer language.

- Font Priority
  This setting uses memory for registering fonts.
- Frame Priority
  This seting uses memory for high speed printing.

Note

❒ Default: Frame Priority

❖ **Unit of Measure**

You can specify the unit of measurement in “mm” or “inch” for the custom paper size.

- mm
- inch

Note

❒ Default value is destination dependant.

❖ **Edge Smoothing**

You can set whether edge smoothing is enabled. When it is on, jagged lines appear more smoothly. Set it to off when the print image contains fine gradation in tone.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❒ If “Toner Saving” is “On”, “Edge Smoothing” is ignored even if it is “On”.

❖ **Toner Saving**

You can select whether or not Toner Saving is enabled

- Off
- On

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ If “Toner Saving” is “On”, “Edge Smoothing” is ignored even if it is “On”.

❖ **Spool Printing**

You can select whether all of the print data is spooled to the hard disk drive before printing.

- Off
- On

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ Spooling stores a sent print job temporarily in the printer, and then prints it.

❒ This menu appears only when the optional hard disk is installed.

❖ **Letterhead Mode**

You can select the letterhead printing mode.

- Off
- Auto Detect
- On (Always)

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Bypass Priority**

When the different paper size or type is specified from the driver, you can specify which setting is given priority to, machine setting or command.

- Machine
- Driver/Command

Note

❒ Default: Driver/Command

❒ Appear only at network standard model.

❖ **RAM Disk**

If the optional hard disk is not installed for PDF Direct Print, select a value of 2 MB or higher.

This menu appears only when the optional hard disk is not installed.

- 0 MB
- 2 MB
- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB

Note

❒ Default: 4 MB

Important

❒ When the amount of SDRAM is small and RAM Disk is set to 16 MB, printing may not be possible depending on the print job and duplex printing may be canceled. If this happens, increase the amount of SDRAM, or set RAM Disk to 8 MB or less.

Reference

For details about the optional SDRAM module, see **Setup Guide**.

❖ **Notify by Email**

You can specify whether or not to send an error message to a preset e-mail address when an error occurs in the printer.

- Off
- On

Important

❒ After changing the setting, turn off the power of the printer briefly, and then turn it on again.

Note

❒ Default: On

Reference

For information, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ **Email Date**

When a mail date/time cannot be notified, the user can set whether a dummy date/time is set or not.

- Off
- On

Note

❒ default: Off

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[Email Date]** from the display panel.

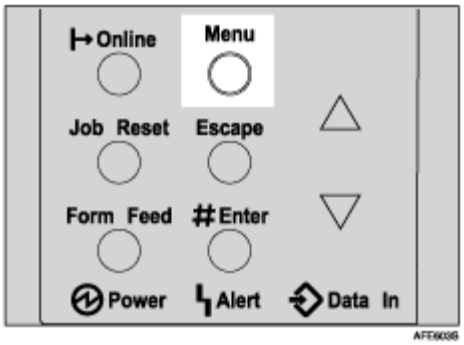
Host Interface Menu

You can set configurations about network connections and communication when using parallel connection between the printer and the computer. The changed configuration holds even if the printer is turned off.

Changing the Host Interface menu

Follow the procedure below to change the I/O Timeout

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Host Interface], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [I/O Timeout], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the lead time needed to end a printing operation, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[Host Interface]** menu appears.

5 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Host Interface menu parameters

This section explains parameters that can be set on the Host Interface menu.

❖ **I/O Buffer**

You can select the size of I/O Buffer. Normally it is not necessary to change this setting.

- 128 KB

- 256 KB
- 512 KB

Note

❒ Default: 128 KB

❖ **I/O Timeout**

You can set how many seconds the printer should wait before ending a print job. If printing operation is frequently interrupted by data from other ports, you can increase the timeout period.

- 10 seconds
- 15 seconds
- 20 seconds
- 25 seconds
- 60 seconds

Note

❒ Default: 15 seconds

❖ **Network Setup**

You can make network-related settings.

Reference

For details, see “Configuration”, **Setup Guide**.

❖ **DHCP**

You can select **[On]** or **[Off]** to use DHCP with TCP/IP.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **IP Address**

You can specify the IP address.

Important

❒ When DHCP is set to on, the IP address cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Note

❒ Default: 011.022.033.044

❖ **Subnet Mask**

You can specify the subnet mask.

Important

❒ When DHCP is set to on, the subnet mask cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Note

❒ Default: 000.000.000.000

❖ **Gateway Address**

You can specify the gateway address.

Important

❒ When DHCP is set to on, the gateway address cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Note

❒ Default: 000.000.000.000

❖ **Frame Type (NW)**

You can select the frame type for NetWare.

- Auto Select
- Ethernet II
- Ethernet 802.2
- Ethernet 802.3
- Ethernet SNAP

Note

❒ Default: Auto Select

❖ **Active Protocol**

You can select the active protocol.

- TCP/IP
- NetWare
- SMB
- AppleTalk

Note

❒ Default: All Active

❖ **Ethernet Speed**

You can select the network speed to operate the printer.

- Auto Select
- 10Mbps Half D.
- 10Mbps Full D.

- 100Mbps Half D.
- 100Mbps Full D.

Note

❒ Default: Auto Select

❖ **LAN Type**

You can select Ethernet or IEEE 802.11b for LAN Type.
This menu appears only when the optional 802.11 interface unit is installed.

- Ethernet
- IEEE 802.11b

Note

❒ Default: Ethernet

❖ **IEEE 1394 Setup**

You can make settings for IEEE 1394. This menu appears only when the optional IEEE 1394 board is installed.

Reference

For details about IEEE 1394 Setup, see **Setup Guide**.

❖ **DHCP**

You can select **[On]** or **[Off]** to use TCP/IP with DHCP.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **IP Address1394**

You can specify the IP address for IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394).

Note

❒ Default: 0.0.0.0

❒ When using both Ethernet and IP over 1394 simultaneously, do not specify the IP address used for Ethernet.

❖ **Subnet Mask1394**

You can specify the subnet mask for IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394).

Note

❒ Default: 0.0.0.0

❒ When using both Ethernet and IP over 1394 simultaneously, do not specify the subnet mask used for Ethernet.

❖ **IP over 1394**
You can specify whether or not to activate IP over 1394.

- Active
- Not Active

Note

❒ Default: Active

❖ **SCSI print**
You can specify whether or not to activate SCSI print.

- Active
- Not Active

Note

❒ Default: Active

❖ **Bidi-SCSI print**
You can specify whether or not to activate bidirectional communication for SCSI print.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **IEEE 802.11b**
You can make settings for wireless LAN. This menu appears only when the optional 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❖ **Comm. Mode**
You can select the transmission mode for IEEE 802.11b.

- 802.11 Ad hoc
- Infrastructure
- Ad hoc

Note

❒ Default: 802.11 Ad hoc

❒ Comm. Mode can also be set using a Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ **Channel**
You can select channels: 1-11 (inch version)/1-13 (metric version).

Note

❒ Default: 11(inch version)/13 (metric version)

❖ **Trans. Speed**

You can select the transmission speed for IEEE 802.11b.

- Auto
- 11 Mbps
- 5.5 Mbps
- 2 Mbps
- 1 Mbps

Note

❒ Default: Auto

❖ **SSID**

You can set an SSID in the infrastructure mode and the 802.11 Ad hoc mode.

Select **[View]** to check the SSID. Select **[Enter ID]** to set SSID.

- View
- Enter ID

Important

❒ Select **[?]** to enter **[/]** for the SSID. Also, **[¥]** appears when printing the configuration page, read it as **[/]**.

Note

❒ Default: blank (ASSID)

❒ Characters used are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes).

❒ An SSID is set automatically to the nearest access point if no SSID has been set.

❒ If no SSID has been set for the 802.11 ad hoc mode, an SSID is set automatically and the same SSID is used for the 802.11 ad hoc mode and the infrastructure mode.

❒ If blank is specified in SSID for 802.11b ad hoc mode or ad hoc mode, “ASSID” appears.

❒ An SSID can also be set using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ **WEP Setting**

You can specify whether or not to activate WEP settings.

- Active
- Not Active

Note

❒ Default: Not Active

❒ The WEP key can be entered using a hexadecimal number or an ASCII character sequence.

❒ When using 64 bit WEP, up to 10 hexadecimal or 5 ASCII characters can be entered. When using 128 bit WEP, up to 26 hexadecimal or 13 ASCII characters can be entered.

❒ The WEP key can also be set using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ **USB Setting**

You can select the transmission speed for USB.

- Full Speed
- Auto

Note

❒ Default: Auto

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[USB Setting]** from the display panel.

❖ **Bluetooth**

This is a standard wireless LAN technology utilizing 2.4Ghz bandwidth. The device can be recognized by computers that have Bluetooth Technology installed when switched to **[Public]**.

- Public
- Private

Note

❒ Default: Public

❒ While the printer is online, press the 【**# Enter**】 key, then press the 【**Escape**】 key, and then press the 【**Menu**】 key. You can access **[Bluetooth]** from the display panel.

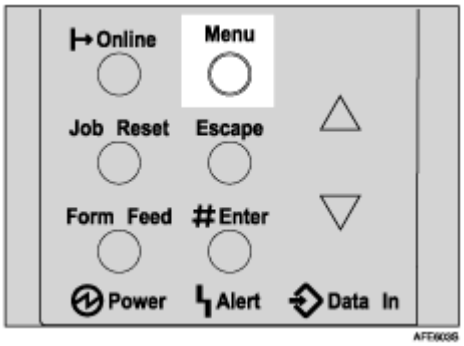
PCL Menu

You can set conditions when using PCL for printing.

Changing the PCL menu

Follow the procedure below to change the setting for Orientation.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [PCL Menu], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Orientation] screen, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the orientation, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[PCL Menu]** screen appears.

5 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

PCL Menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the PCL menu.

❖ **Orientation**

You can select the page orientation.

- Portrait
- Landscape

Note

❒ Default: Portrait

❖ **Form Lines**

You can specify the number of lines per page between 5 and 128.

Note

❒ Default:

- Metric version: 64
- Inch version: 60

❖ **Font Source**

You can set the location of the default font.

- Resident
- RAM
- HDD
- SD

Note

❒ Default: Resident

❒ When you select **[RAM]**, you can select only fonts downloaded to the printer RAM.

❒ When you select **[HDD]**, you can select only fonts downloaded to the optional hard disk.

❖ **Font Number**

You can specify the ID of the default font you want to use.

- 0 to 50 (Internal)
- 1 to 50 (Download)

❖ **Point Size**

You can specify the point size you want to use for the default font between 4 and 999.75 in 0.25 increments.

Note

❒ Default: 12.00 points

❒ This setting is effective only for a variable-space font.

❖ **Font Pitch**

You can specify the number of characters per inch you want to use for the default font between 0.44 and 99.99 in 0.01 increments.

Note

❒ Default: 10.00 pitch

❒ This setting is effective only for fixed-space fonts.

❖ **Symbol Set**

You can specify the character set for the default font. Available sets are as follows:

Roman-8, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, PC-8, PC-8 D/N, PC-850, PC-852, PC8-TK, Win L1, Win L2, Win L5, Desktop, PS Text, VN Intl, VN US, MS Publ, Math-8, PS Math, VN Math, Pifont, Legal, ISO 4, ISO 6, ISO 11, ISO 15, ISO 17, ISO 21, ISO 60, ISO 69, Win 3.0

❒ Default: PC-8

❖ **Courier Font**

You can select a courier-type font.

- Regular
- Dark

❒ Default: Regular

❖ **Ext. A4 Width**

You can extend the width of the printable area of A4 sheets reducing side margin width.

- Off
- On

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Append CR to LF**

You can specify whether or not to append a CR code to each LF code to print text data clearly.

- Off
- On

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Resolution**

You can specify the print resolution in dots per inch.

- 300 dpi
- 600 dpi

❒ Default: 600 dpi

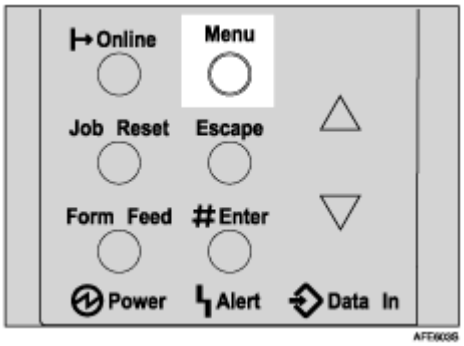
PS Menu

You can set conditions when using Postscript for printing.

Changing the PS menu

Follow the procedure below to change the setting for date format.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [PS Menu], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Data Format], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [TBCP], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[PS Menu]** screen appears.

5 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

PS Menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Postscript menu.

❖ **Data Format**

You can select the data format.

- Binary Data
- TBCP

This setting is effective when using a parallel, USB, or EtherTalk connection.

When you use a parallel or USB connection, the print job is canceled if binary data is sent from the printer driver.
When you use an Ethernet connection, the print job is canceled if:

- The printer driver data format is TBCP and the data format selected using the control panel is Binary Data.
- The printer driver data format is binary and the data format selected using the control panel is TBCP.

Note

❒ Default: Binary Data

❖ **Resolution**

You can select the resolution.

- 300 dpi
- 600 dpi
- 1200 dpi

Note

❒ Default: 600 dpi

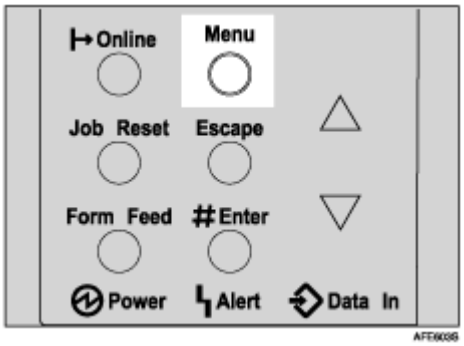
PDF Menu

You can set conditions when using PDF printing.

Changing the PDF menu

Follow the procedure below to change the resolution setting.

1 Press【Menu】key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press【▲】or【▼】key to display [PDF Menu], and then press the【# Enter】key.

3 Press【▲】or【▼】key to display [Resolution], and then press the【# Enter】key.

4 Press【▲】or【▼】key to select the resolution, and then press the【# Enter】key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[PDF Menu]** screen appears.

5 Press the【Online】key.

The initial screen appears.

PDF Menu parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the PDF menu.

❖ **PDF: Change PW**

You can specify the password for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- Current PW

Important

❒ The password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but must be sent through the network. For increased security, use this menu on the control panel to set the password directly.

Note

❒ Default: no password set

❖ **PDF Group PW**

You can set a group password specified using DeskTopBinder Lite.

Note

❒ When you use a group password, the optional data protection unit must be installed.

- Current PW

Important

❒ The password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but must be sent through the network. For increased security, use this menu on the control panel to set the password directly.

Note

❒ Default: no password set

❖ **Resolution**

You can select the resolution for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- 300 dpi
- 600 dpi
- 1200 dpi

Note

❒ Default: 600 dpi

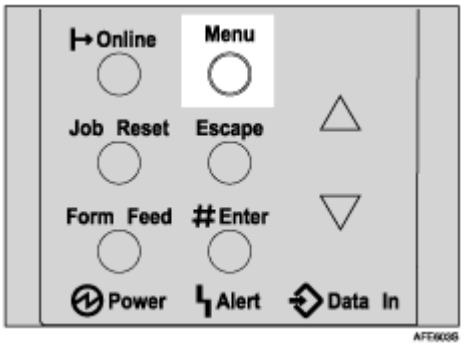
Language Menu

You can set language displayed on the menu.

Changing the language menu

Follow the procedure below to change the language.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



The **[Menu]** screen appears.

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to display [Language], and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the language, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Wait for two seconds. The **[Menu]** screen appears.

4 Press the 【Online】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Language menu parameters

You can select the language you use. Available languages are as follows:

English, German, French, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Spanish, Finnish, Portuguese, Czech, Polish, and Hungarian.

Note

❒ Default: English

Using Web Image Monitor

Using Web Image Monitor, you can check the printer status and change settings.

❖ **Available operations**
The following operations can be remotely performed using Web Image Monitor from a client computer.

- Displaying printer status or settings
- Checking the print job status or history
- Interrupting currently printing jobs
- Resetting the printer
- Managing the Address Book
- Making printer settings
- Making e-mail notification settings
- Making network protocol settings
- Making security settings

❖ **Configuring the printer**
To perform the operations from Web Image Monitor, TCP/IP is required. After the printer is configured to use TCP/IP, operations from Web Image Monitor become available.

❖ **Recommended Web browser**

- Windows:
  Internet Explorer 5.5 or higher
  Netscape Navigator 7.0 or higher
- Mac OS 8.1 or higher:
  Netscape Navigator 7.0 or higher
  Safari 1.0 or higher

Note

❒ To use Netscape Navigator with Secured Sockets Layer (SSL: an encryption protocol), use Netscape Navigator 7.0 or higher.

❒ If the previous versions of the Web browser above are used or JavaScript and cookies are not enabled with the Web browser used, display and operation problems may occur.

❒ If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your network administrator for information about the settings.

❒ The previous page may not appear even after the back button of a Web browser is clicked. If this happens, click the refresh button of a Web browser.

❒ Updating the printer information is not automatically performed. Click **[Refresh]** in the display area to update the printer information.

Copyright © 2004, 2005

Displaying Top Page

This section explains the Top Page and how to display Web Image Monitor.

1 Start your Web browser.

2 Enter “http: //(printer's address)/” in the address bar of a Web browser.

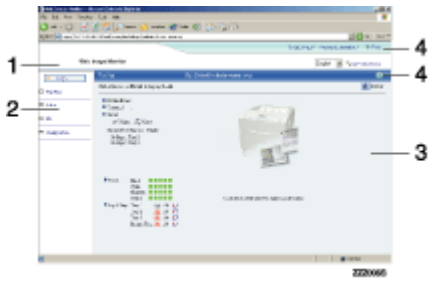
Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

Note

❒ If the printer's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, you can enter it. For details, see p.280 “Using DHCP”.

❒ When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentification is issued , enter “https://(printer's address)/“.

Every Web Image Monitor page is divided into the following areas:



1. Header area

The link to help and dialog box for keyword search appears.

2. Menu area

The dialog box for switching to the user mode and administrator mode appears, and each mode's menu will be displayed.

If you select menu, it's content will be shown on the work area, or the sub area.

3. Display area

Displays the contents of the item selected in the menu area.

Printer information in the display area is not automatically updated. Click **[Refresh]** at the upper right in the display area to update the printer information. Click the Web browser's **[Refresh]** button to refresh the entire browser screen.

Printer status, network interface board names, and comments are displayed.

4. Help

Use Help to view or download Help file contents.

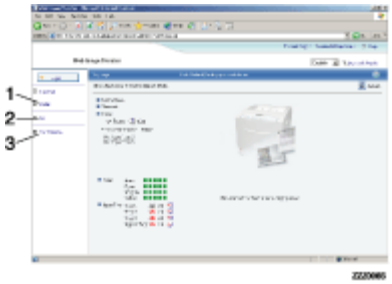
About Menu and Mode

There are two modes available with Web Image Monitor: user mode and administrator mode.

Displayed Items may differ depending on the printers.

❖ About User Mode

In the user mode, printer status, settings, and print job status can be viewed, but the printer settings cannot be changed.



1. Status

Printer status, including the amount of remaining paper in paper trays and the amount of remaining toner, is displayed.

2. Job

Allows you to display list of Spooled print Job, Job History, Error Log, Locked Print and Sample Print jobs. This also perform or delete Locked Print and Sample Print jobs.

3. Configuration

Display current printer and network settings, and download help files.

❖ Administrator Mode

In the administrator mode, you can configure various printer settings.

1. Status

Printer status, including the amount of remaining paper in paper trays and the amount of remaining toner, is displayed.

2. Job

Allows you to display list of Spooled Print Job, Job History, Error Log, Sample Print and Locked Print. This also allows you to delete Spooled Print Job, Locked Print and Sample Print Jobs.

3. Address Book

User information can be registered, displayed, changed, and deleted.

4. Configuration

Make system settings for the printer, interface settings, and security.

5. Reset Printer Job

Click to reset current print jobs and print jobs in queue. This button is located on Top Page.

6. Reset Device

Click to reset the printer. If a print job is being processed, the printer will be reset after the print job is completed. This button is located on Top Page.

Access in the Administrator Mode

Follow the procedure below to access Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.

1 On Top Page, click [Login].

The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

2 Enter your user name and password, and then click [OK].

To use the default account, enter “admin” as user name, and leave the password blank.

Displaying Web Image Monitor Help

When using Help for the first time, clicking either **[Help]** in the header area or the icon marked “?” in the display area makes the following screen appear, in which you can view Help in two different ways, as shown below:

❖ **Viewing Help on our Web site**
Downloading Help to your computer

❖ **Downloading and Checking Help**
You can download Help to your computer. As the Help URL, you can specify the path to the local file to view the Help without connecting to the Internet.

Note

❒ By clicking **[Help]** in the header area, the contents of Help appear.

❒ By clicking “?”, the Help icon in the display area, Help for the setting items in the display area appears.

Downloading Help

1. **In the [OS] list, select the operating system.**
2. **In the [Language] list, select the language.**
3. **Click [Download].**
4. **Download Help by following the instructions on the screen.**
5. **Store the downloaded compressed file in a location, and then decompress the file.**

   To view the downloaded Web Image Monitor Help, set the path to the location of the decompressed file.

Linking the URL of the Help File to the [Help] Button.

You can link the URL of the help file on a computer or Web server to the **[Help]** button.

1. **Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.**
2. **In the menu area, click [Configuration].**
3. **Click [Webpage].**
4. **In the [Help URL] box, enter the URL of the help file.**

   If you saved the help file to "C:HELPEN", enter "file://C:/HELP/". For example, if you saved the file to a Web server, and the URL of the index file is "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/EN/index.html", enter "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".
5. **Click [Apply].**

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can monitor the network printers. Also, you can change the configuration of the network interface board using TCP/IP or IPX/SPX.

❖ **Protocol stack provided with Operating System**

- Windows 95/98/Me
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  NetWare
  NetWare Client32 for Windows 95
  IntraNetWare Client for Windows 95
  Novell Client for Windows 95/98/Me
- Windows 2000
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  NetWare
  Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP
- Windows Server 2003
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
- Windows XP
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP
- Windows NT 4.0
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  Client Service for NetWare
  NetWare Client32 for Windows NT
  IntraNetWare Client for Windows NT
  Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP

❖ **Available operations**

The following functions are available:

- Printer Information function
  - Display the network settings and detailed information of the printer.
  - Display the number of pages printed under each user code.
  - Display the status of print jobs sent form computers.
  - Change the printer network settings.
- Device Settings function

- Lock some of the setting items on the control panel so that they cannot be changed using the control panel.
- Select type of paper loaded in the paper trays.

- Energy Saver function
  - Enable or disable the Energy Saver mode.
- System Status function
  - Display the information such as when paper is depleted during printing on a computer .
- Groups function
  - Monitor multiple printers at the same time. When there are multiple printers to manage, you can create groups and classify the printers to facilitate management.
  - You can customize printer status according to groups, and send status notification e-mail to a computer.

Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Follow the procedure below to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Note

❒ Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch “Setup.exe” located on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client/Admin] installation, and then click [Next].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading through its contents, click **[I accept the agreement]** if you agree, and then click **[Next >]**.

6 Follow the instructions on the screen.

A message appears when the installation is complete.

7 Click [OK].

Note

❒ If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, restart the computer and continue the configuration.

❒ SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin supports the following languages: Czech, Danish, German, English, Spanish, French, Italian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Finnish, Swedish, Chinese Simple and Chinese Traditional.

Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration

Follow the procedure below to change the network interface board configuration using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)]. A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Note

❒ Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

3 In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.

4 On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

To use the default account, enter “admin” as the user name, and leave the password blank.

NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instruction on the screen.

5 Enter required setting items.

Configure settings using Web Image Monitor. For details, see p.162 “Using Web Image Monitor”.

6 Quit Web Image Monitor.

7 Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Locking the Menus on the Printer's Control Panel

Follow the procedure below to lock the menus on the printer's control panel.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Note

❒ Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

3 Select a printer.

4 On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [Lock Operation Panel Menu].

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

To use the default account, enter “admin” as the user name, and leave the password blank.

The **[System]** page of Web Image Monitor appears.

6 Select [Level 1] or [Level 2] in the [Protect Printer Operation Panel] list.

7 Click [Apply].

8 Quit Web Image Monitor.

Reference

For details about setting items, see Help in the **[General Settings]** on **[Configuration]** page.

Changing the Paper Type

Follow the procedure below to change the paper type.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Note

❒ Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

3 In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.

4 On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [Select Paper Type].

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

To use the default account, enter “admin” as the user name, and leave the password blank.

The **[Paper]** page appears.

6 Select a paper type in the [Paper Type] list for each tray.

7 Click [Apply].

8 Quit Web Image Monitor.

Reference

For details about setting items, see Help in the **[General Settings]** on **[Configuration]** page.

Managing User Information

Follow the procedure below to manage the user's information using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Prints jobs can be managed and functions restricted by user codes.

Starting User Management Tool

Follow the procedure below to start User Management Tool.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Note

❒ Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

3 In the list, select a printer you want to manage.

4 On the [Tools] menu, click [User Management Tool].

The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

5 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

The default user name is “admin”, and default password is left blank.

User Management Tool starts.

Reference

For details about User Management Tool, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Displaying the Number of Sheets Printed

Follow the procedure below to display the number of sheets printed under each user code.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [User Page Count] tab of User Management Tool.**
   The number of pages printed under each user code appears.
3. **Click [Finish] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Exporting the information about the number of pages printed

Follow the procedure below to export the information of the number of pages printed under each user code as a .csv file.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [User Page Count] tab of User Management Tool.**
3. **On the [File] menu, click [Export User Statistics List].**
4. **Specify the save location and file name, and then click [Save].**
5. **Click [Finish] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Resetting the number of pages printed to 0.

Follow the procedure below to reset the number of pages printed under each user code to 0.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin .**
2. **Click the [User Page Count] tab of User Management Tool.**
3. **Click the user whose information you want to reset.**
4. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Reset User Counters].**
5. **Select the check box of the items you want to reset, and then click [OK].**
   A confirmation message appears.
6. **Click [Yes].**
   The number of pages printed is reset to 0.
7. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].**
   Changes are applied to information on the **[User Page Count]** tab.
8. **Click [Finish] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Restricting Functions

Follow the procedure below to restrict use of individual functions.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Edit] menu of User Management Tool, click [Restrict Access To Device].**
3. **Select the check box of the functions you want to restrict.**
4. **Click [OK].**

   A confirmation message appears.
5. **Click [Yes].**

   The settings are applied.

Setting Applicable Functions to New Users

Follow the procedure below to add new users and set functions applicable to them.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [Access Control List:] tab of User Management Tool.**
3. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Add New User].**
4. **Enter the user code and user name.**
5. **Select the check box of the functions applicable to the new user.**

   Note

   ❒ If the check boxes are unavailable, there is no restriction to use that function. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
6. **Click [OK].**

   The new user is added.
7. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].**

   The settings are applied.
8. **Click [Finish] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

   Reference

   For details about setting restrictions, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Configuring the Energy Saver Mode

Follow the procedure below to configure Energy Saver mode.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Note

❒ Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

3 Select the printer whose settings you want to make.

To make settings for all printers in the selected group, select no printer.

4 On the [Group] menu, point to [Energy Save Mode], point to [Set Individually] to make the settings for only the selected printer or point to [Set By Group] to make the settings for all printers in the selected group, and then click [On] or [Off].

5 Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Reference

For details about the setting value for Energy Saver mode, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Setting a Password

Follow the procedure below to set a password.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

3 In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.

4 On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instructions on the screen.

5 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

To use the default account, enter “admin” as the user name, and leave the password blank.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

6 **Click [Configuration].**

7 **Click [Device Settings].**

8 **Click [Program/Change Administrator].**

9 **Click [Change].**

10 **On the [New Password], enter a password.**

Enter the same password in **[Confirm Password]** .

11 **Click [OK].**

12 **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

13 **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Checking the Printer Status

Follow the procedure below to check printer status.

1 **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2 **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)].**

The status of printers is indicated by icons in the list.

Note

❒ For details about status icons, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

3 **To obtain status details, click the printer in the list, and then click [Open] on the [Device] menu.**

The printer status appears in the dialog box.

4 **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

❒ For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Changing Names and Comments

Follow the procedure below to change the names and comments of the printer.

1 **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2 On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [TCP/IP], [IPX/SPX] or [TCP/IP(SNMPv3)]. A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Note

❒ Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

3 Select a printer in the list.

4 On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instructions on the screen.

5 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

To use the default account, enter “admin” as the user name, and leave the password blank.

6 Click [Configuration].

7 Click [Device Settings].

8 On the [System] page, enter the device name in the [Device Name] box and a comment in the [Comment] box, and click [Apply].

- In the **[Device Name]** box, enter a device name on the machine using up to 31 characters.
- In the **[Comment]** box, enter a comment on the printer using up to 31 characters.

9 Click [OK].

10 Quit Web Image Monitor.

11 Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

To view the status of printers using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, configure SmartDeviceMonitor for Client beforehand.

Monitoring Printers

Follow the procedure below to monitor the printer using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon appears in the task tray.

2 Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and check that the printer appears on the pop-up menu.

3 Click [Options...] on the pop-up menu if the printer does not appear on the pop-up menu.

The **[SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Options]** dialog box appears.

4 Click the printer you want to monitor, and then select the [To Be Monitored] check box in the [Monitoring Information Settings] area.

Note

❒ To display the printer status in the task tray using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, select the **[Displayed on Task Bar]** check box.

❒ For details about status icons, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

5 Click [OK].

The dialog box closes and the configured printer is monitored.

Checking the Printer Status

Follow the procedure below to check printer status using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1 Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

2 For status details, right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then click the printer.

The printer status appears in the dialog box.

Note

❒ For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

When using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, note the following:

- The network printer can only receive one print job from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client at a time. While the network printer is printing, another user cannot access it until the job is finished. In this case, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client tries to access the network printer until the retry interval expires.
- If SmartDeviceMonitor for Client cannot access the network printer and times out, it will stop sending the print job. In this case, you should cancel the paused status from the print queue window. SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will resume access to the network printer. You can delete the print job from the print queue window, but canceling a print job printed by the network printer might cause the next job sent from another user to be incorrectly printed.
- If a print job sent from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is interrupted and the network printer cancels the job because something went wrong, send the print job again.
- Print jobs sent from another computer do not appear in the print queue window, regardless of protocol.
- If various users send print jobs using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to network printers, the printing order might not be the same as that in which the jobs were sent.
- An IP address cannot be used for the IPP port name because the IP address is used for the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port name.
- When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentification is issued, enter “https://(printer's address)/”. Internet Explorer must be installed on your computer. Use the highest version. Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is recommended.
- If the **[Security Alert]** dialog box appears when accessing the printer using IPP to create or configure an IPP port, or when printing, install the certificate. To select the certificate store location when using Certificate Import Wizard, click **[Place all certificates in the following store]**, and then click **[Local Computer]** under **[Trusted Root Certification Authorities]**.

Printer Status Notification by E-Mail

Whenever a paper tray becomes empty or paper is jammed, an e-mail alert is issued to the registered addresses to notify the printer status.

For this notification, you can make the e-mail notification settings.

Notification timing and e-mail content can be set.

1. **Set [Notify by Email] under the [System] menu to [On] using the control panel. .**

   The default is **[On]**.

   Reference

   For details, see p.139 “System Menu”.

2. **Open a Web browser, and then enter “http: //(printer's address)/” in the address bar.**

   Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

   When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentification is issued , enter “https://(printer's address)/”.

3. **Click [Login] on Top Page of Web Image Monitor.**

   The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

4. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].**

   To use the default account, enter “admin” as user name, and leave the password blank.

5. **In the menu area, click [Configuration].**

6. **Click [Device Settings], and then click [E-mail].**

7. **Make the following settings:**
   - Items in the Reception column
   - Items in the SMTP column
   - Items in the POP before SMTP column
   - Items in the POP3/IMAP4 column
   - Items in the E-mail Reception Port column
   - Items in the E-mail Notification column

8. **Click [Apply].**

Auto E-mail Notification

1 In the menu area, click [Auto E-mail Notification].

The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

2 Make the following settings:

- Notification Message
- Items in the Groups to Notify column
- Items in the Select Groups/Items to Notify column
  To make detailed settings for these items, click **[Edit]** next to **[Details of E-mail Notification Settings]**.

3 Click [Apply].

4 Quit Web Image Monitor.

On-demand E-mail Notification

1 n the menu area, click [On-demand E-mail Notification].

The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

2 Make the following settings:

- Notification Subject
- Items in the Access Restriction to Information column
- Items in the Receivable E-mail Address/Domain Name Settings column

3 Click [Apply].

4 Quit Web Image Monitor.

Remote Maintenance by telnet

Important

- ❒ Remote Maintenance should be password-protected so that access is allowed to administrators only.
- ❒ The password is the same as the one of Web Image Monitor administrator. When the password is changed using “mshell”, other passwords change also.
- ❒ Some commands cannot be used depending on your printer.

Using telnet

Follow the procedure below to use telnet.

Important

- ❒ Only one user at a time can log on to perform remote maintenance.

1 Use the IP address or the host name of the printer to start telnet.

```
% telnet IP_address
```

2 Enter your user name and password.

To use default account, enter “admin” as user name, and leave the password blank.

3 Enter a command.

4 Quit telnet.

```
msh> logout
```

The configuration message about saving the changes appears.

5 Enter “yes” to save the changes, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

If you do not want to save the changes, enter “no”, and then press the 【# Enter】 key. To make further changes, enter “return” at the command line, and then press the 【# Enter】 key.

Note

- ❒ If the message “Can not write NVRAM information” appears, the changes are not saved. Repeat the procedure above.
- ❒ When the changes are saved, the network interface board is reset automatically with that changes.
- ❒ When the network interface board resets, the print job in print process will be printed. However, print jobs in queue will be canceled.

access

Use the “access” command to view and configure access control. You can also specify two or more access ranges.

❖ View settings

```
msh> access
```

❖ Configuration

```
msh> access☆ range “start-address end-address”
```

- ☆ represents a target number between 1 and 5. (Up to five access ranges can be registered and selected.)

Example: to specify accessible IP addresses between 192.168.0.10 and 192.168.0.20:

```
msh> access 1 range 192.168.0.10 192.168.0.20
```

❖ Access control initialization

```
msh> access flush
```

- Use the “flush” command to restore the default settings so that all access ranges become “0.0.0.0”.

Note

❒ The access range restricts computers from use of the printer by IP address. If you do not need to restrict printing, make the setting “0.0.0.0”.

❒ Valid ranges must be from lower (start address) to higher (end address).

❒ Up to five access ranges can be specified. The entry is invalid if the target number is omitted.

❒ You cannot access Web Image Monitor from a restricted IP address.

appletalk

Use the “appletalk” command to view and configure Appletalk parameters.

❖ View settings

```
msh> appletalk
```

- [2] means “active” and [0] means “inactive”.
- The default is [2].

❖ Changing PAP timeout configuration

```
msh> appletalk ptimeout value > 0
```

- Timeout value becomes effective.

```
msh> appletalk ptimeout value = 0
```

- Timeout value becomes ineffective.

autonet

Use the “autonet” command to configure AutoNet parameters.

❖ **View settings**
The following command displays the current AutoNet settings:

```
msh> autonet
```

❖ **Configuration**
You can configure AutoNet settings.

```
msh> autonet {on|off}
```

- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.

❖ **Current interface priority configuration display**

```
msh> autonet priority
```

❖ **Interface priority configuration**

```
msh> autonet priority “interface_name”
```

- You can give interface's AutoNet parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

Note

❒ If an interface is not selected, the current interface connection settings remain in effect.

Reference

For details about AutoNet, refer to autonet parameters.

btconfig

Use the “btconfig” command to make Bluetooth settings.

❖ **View settings**
Bluetooth settings are displayed.

```
msh> btconfig
```

❖ **Mode settings**

You can set the Bluetooth operation mode to {private} or {public}.

```
msh> btconfig {private | public}
```

- The default is {public}.

devicename

Use the “devicename” command to display and change the printer name.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> devicename
```

❖ **Printer name configuration**

```
msh> devicename name “string”
```

- Enter a printer name using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Set single names for each printer.

❖ **Printer name initialization**

```
msh> devicename clear name
```

- Reset the printer name to its default.

dhcp

Use the “dhcp” command to configure DHCP settings.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays the current DHCP settings.

```
msh> dhcp
```

❖ **Configuration**

You can configure DHCP.

```
msh> dhcp “interface_name” {on|off}
```

- Click {on} to enable dhcp. Click {off} to disable DHCP.
- If the DNS server address and domain name are obtained from DHCP, be sure to click {on}.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface

Interface name	Interface configured
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ **Current interface priority configuration display**

```
msh> dhcp priority
```

❖ **Interface priority configuration**

```
msh> dhcp priority "interface_name"
```

- You can select which interface has DHCP parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.

❖ **DNS server address selection**

```
msh> dhcp dnsaddr {dhcp | static}
```

- Specify whether to obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server or use the address set by a user.
- To obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the address set by a user, specify "static".

❖ **Domain name selection**

```
msh> dhcp domainname {dhcp | static}
```

- Specify whether to obtain the domain name from the DNS server or use the domain name set by a user.
- To obtain the domain name from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the domain name set by a user, specify "static".

Reference

For details about DHCP functions, see p.280 "Using DHCP".

For details about setting the DNS server address, see p.186 "dns".

For details about setting the domain name, see p.187 "domainname".

diprint

The direct printing port enables direct printing from a network-connected computer.

Use the "diprint" command to change direct printing port settings.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays the current direct printing port settings:

```
msh> diprint
```

Example output:

```
port 9100
timeout=300(sec)
bidirect on
```

- The “Port” specifies the port number of the direct printing port.
- The “bidirect” setting indicates whether the direct printing port is bidirectional or not.

❖ **Setting timeout**

```
msh> diprint timeout [30~65535]
```

- You can specify the timeout interval to use when the printer is expecting data from the network.
- The default is 300 seconds.

❖ **Setting bidirect**

```
msh> diprint bidirect {on | off}
```

- You can specify whether the direct printing port is bidrectional or not.

dns

Use the “dns” command to configure or display DNS (Domain Name System) settings.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays current DNS settings:

```
msh> dns
```

❖ **DNS server configuration**

The following command enables or disables the DNS server address:

```
msh> dns “number” server “server address”
```

The following command displays a configuration using the IP address 192.168.15.16 on a DNS 1 server:

```
msh> dns 1 server 192.168.15.16
```

- You can register up to three DNS server numbers.
- You cannot use “255.255.255.255” as the DNS server address.

❖ **Dynamic DNS function setting**

```
msh> dns “interface_name” ddns {on|off}
```

- You can set the dynamic DNS function “active” or “inactive”.
- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface

Interface name	Interface configured
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ **Specifying the record overlap operation**

msh> dns overlap {update|add}

- You can specify operations performed when records overlap.
- update
  To delete old records and register new records.
- add
  To add new records and store the old records.
- When CNAME overlaps, it is always changed, irrespective of settings.

❖ **CNAME registration**

msh> dns cname {on|off}

- You can specify whether to register CNAME.
- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.
- The CNAME registered is the default name beginning with rnp. CNAME cannot be changed.

❖ **A records registration**

msh> dns arecord {dhcp|own}

- {dhcp}
  You can specify the method of registering an A record when the dynamic DNS function is enabled and DHCP is used.
- {own}
  To register an A record using the printer as the DNS client.
  The DNS server address and the domain name already designated are used for the registration.

❖ **Record updating interval settings**

msh> dns interval “time”

- You can specify the interval after which records are updated when using the dynamic DNS function.
- The updating interval is specified hourly. It can be entered between 1 and 255 hours.
- The default is 24 hours.

domainname

Use the “domainname” command to display or configure the domain name settings.

You can configure the Ethernet interface, IEEE 1394 interface, or IEEE 802.11b interface.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays the current domain name:

```
msh> domainname
```

❖ **Interface domain configuration**

```
msh> domainname "interface_name"
```

❖ **Setting the Domain Name**

```
msh> domainname "interface_name" name "domain name"
```

- A domain name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- The Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11b interface will have the same domain name.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface	Interface set
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ **Deleting the Domain Name**

```
msh> domainname "interface_name" clear name
```

help

Use the “help” command to display the available command list and the procedures for using those commands.

❖ **Command list display**

```
msh> help
```

❖ **Display of procedure for using commands**

```
msh> help "command_name"
```

hostname

Use the “hostname” command to change the printer name.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> hostname
```

❖ **Configuration**

msh> hostname "interface_name" "printer_name"

- Enter the printer name using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- You cannot use a printer name starting with "RNP" or "rnp".
- The Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11b interface will have the same printer name.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ **Initializing the printer name for each interface**

msh>hostname interface_name clear name

ifconfig

Use the "ifconfig" command to configure TCP/IP (IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, default gateway address) for the printer.

❖ **View settings**

msh> ifconfig

❖ **Configuration**

msh> ifconfig "interface_name" "parameter" "address"

- If you did not enter an interface name, it is automatically set to the Ethernet interface.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet Interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 Interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b Interface

❖ **Netmask configuration**

msh> ifconfig "interface_name" netmask "address"

❖ **Broadcast address configuration**

msh> ifconfig "interface_name" broadcast "address"

❖ **Changing the Interface**

```
msh> ifconfig "interface" up
```

- You can specify either the Ethernet interface or IEEE 802.11b interface when using the optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit.
  You cannot specify the IEEE 1394 interface.

The following explains how to configure an IP address 192.168.15.16 on Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether 192.168.15.16
```

The following explains how to configure a subnet mask 255.255.255.0 on Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether netmask 255.255.255.0
```

Note

❒ To get the above addresses, contact your network administrator.

❒ Use the default configuration if you cannot obtain setting addresses.

❒ The IP address, subnet mask and broadcast address are the same as that for the ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11b interface.

❒ When installing the optional 1394 Interface board, set the IP address and subnet mask so that it does not overlap with the ethernet interface or the IEEE 1394 interface.

❒ TCP/IP configuration is the same for both Ethernet and IEEE 802.11b interface. If interfaces are changed, the new interface inherits the configuration.

❒ Use "0x" as the initial two letters of a hexadecimal address.

info

Use the "info" command to display printer information such as paper tray, output tray, and printer language.

❖ **Printer information display**

```
msh> info
```

Reference

For details about displayed contents, see p.210 "Getting Printer Information over the Network".

ipp

Use the "ipp" command to configure IPP settings.

❖ **Viewing settings**

The following command displays the current IPP settings:

```
msh> ipp
```

Example output:

```
timeout=900(sec)
auth basic
```

- The “timeout” setting specifies how many seconds the computer tries to send print jobs when no connection can be made to the network printer.
- The “auth” setting indicates the user authorization mode.

❖ **IPP timeout configuration**

Specify how many seconds the computer waits before canceling an interrupted print job. The time can be entered between 30 to 65535 seconds.

```
msh> ipp timeout [30 - 65535]
```

❖ **IPP user authorization configuration**

Use IPP user authorization to restrict users to print with IPP. The default is “off”.

```
msh> ipp auth {basic|digest|off}
```

- User authorization settings are “basic” and “digest”.
- Use “off” to remove a user's authorization.
- If user authorization is specified, register a user name. You can register up to 10 users.

❖ **IPP user configuration**

Use the following command:

```
msh> ipp user
```

The following message appears:

```
msh> Input user number (1 to 10):
```

Enter the number, user name, and password.

```
msh> IPP user name:user1
msh> IPP password:*******
```

After configuring the settings, the following message appears:

```
User configuration changed.
```

netware

Use the “netware” command to configure the NetWare settings such as the print server name or file server name.

❖ **Netware Printer Server Names**

```
msh> netware pname
```

- Enter the NetWare print server name using up to 47 characters.

❖ **Netware File Server Names**

```
msh> netware fname
```

- Enter the NetWare file server name using up to 47 characters.

❖ **Encap type**

```
msh> netware encap [802.3/802.2/snap/ethernet2/auto]
```

❖ **Remote Printer Number**

```
msh> netware rnum
```

❖ **Timeout**

```
msh> netware timeout
```

❖ **Printer server mode**

```
msh> netware mode pserver
msh> netware mode ps
```

❖ **Remote printer mode**

```
msh> netware mode rprinter
msh> netware mode rp
```

❖ **NDS context name**

```
msh> netware context
```

❖ **SAP interval**

```
msh> netware "sap_interval"
```

❖ **Setting login mode for file server**

```
msh> netware login server
```

❖ **Setting login mode for NDS tree**

```
msh> netware login tree
```

❖ **Setting login mode for NDS tree name**

```
msh> netware tree "NDS name"
```

passwd

Use the "passwd" command to change the remote maintenance password.

❖ **Changing the Password**

```
msh> passwd
```

- Enter the current password.
- Enter the new password.
- Enter the new password once again.

Note

❒ Be sure not to forget or lose the password.

❒ The password can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Passwords are case-sensitive. For example, “R” is not the same as “r”.

prnlog

Use the “prnlog” command to obtain printer log information.

❖ **Print logs display**

```
msh> prnlog
```

- Displays 16 previous print jobs.

```
msh> prnlog ID Number
```

- Specify the ID number of the displayed print log information to display additional details about a print job.

Note

❒ For details about displayed contents, see p.210 “Getting Printer Information over the Network”.

rendezvous

Use the “rendezvous” command to display rendezvous-related settings.

❖ **View settings**

Rendezvous settings are displayed.

```
msh> rendezvous
```

❖ **Current computer name display**

```
msh> rendezvous cname
```

❖ **Display information about the current printer location**

```
msh> rendezvous location
```

❖ **Rendezvous computer name setting**

You can specify the rendezvous computer name.

```
msh> rendezvous cname "computer name"
```

- The computer name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.

❖ **rendezvous Installation location information setting**

You can enter information about the location where the printer is installed.

```
msh> rendezvous location "location"
```

- Information about location can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

❖ Setting order of priority for each protocol

- diprint

  msh> rendezvous diprint [0-99]

- lpr

  msh> rendezvous lpr [0-99]

- ipp

  msh> rendezvous ipp [0-99]

You can specify the order of priority for “diprint”, “lpr”, and “ipp”. Smaller numbers indicate higher priority.

❖ IP TTL setting

msh> rendezvous ipttl {1-255}

You can specify the IP TTL (the number of routers a packet can pass through).

Note

❒ The default is 255.

❖ Resetting the computer name and location information

You can reset the computer name and location information.

msh> rendezvous clear {cname | location}

- cname
  Reset the computer name. The default computer name will be displayed when the computer is restarted.
- location
  Reset the location information. The previous location information will be deleted.

❖ Interface configuration

msh> rendezvous linklocal “interface_name”

- If many types of interface are installed, configure the interface that communicates with linklocal address.
  If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is automatically selected.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

route

Use the “route” command to control the routing table.

❖ **All route information display**

```
msh> route
```

❖ **Specified route information display**

```
msh> route “destination”
```

- Specify the IP address to destination.

❖ **Enabling/disabling Specified Destination**

```
msh> route active {host|net} “destination” {on | off}
```

- You can turn the specified destination on or off. Host becomes the default setting.

❖ **Adding Routing Table**

```
msh> route add {host|net} “destination” “gateway”
```

- Adds a host or network route to “destination”, and a gateway address to “gateway” in the table.
- Specify the IP address to destination and gateway.
- Host becomes the default setting.

❖ **Setting Default Gateway**

```
msh> route add default gateway
```

❖ **Deleting Specified destination from Routing Table**

```
msh> route delete {host|net} “destination”
```

- Host becomes the default setting.
- IP address of destination can be specified.

❖ **Route Flush**

```
msh> route flush
```

Note

❒ The maximum number of routing tables is 16.

❒ Set a gateway address when communicating with devices on an external network.

❒ The same gateway address is shared by all interfaces.

set

Use the “set” command to set the protocol information display “active” or “inactive”.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays protocol information (active/inactive).

msh> set tcpip

msh> set appletalk

msh> set netware

msh> set smb

msh> set scsiprint

- scsiprint is available when the optional IEEE 1394 interface board is installed.

msh> set ip1394

- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.

msh> set protocol

- When protocol is specified, information about TCP/IP, appletalk, netware, and smb appears.

msh> set lpr

msh> set ftp

msh> set rsh

msh> set diprint

msh> set web

msh> set snmp

msh> set ssl

msh> set nrs

msh> set rfu

msh> set ipp

msh> set http

msh> set rendezvous

❖ **Configuration**

- Enter “up”to enable protocol, and enter “down” to disable protocol.

You can set the protocol to “active” or “inactive”.

msh> set tcpip {up | down}

- If you disable TCP/IP, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via TCP/IP.

- Disabling TCP/IP also disables ip1394, lpr, ftp, rsh, diprint, web, snmp, ssl, ipp, http, and rendezvous

```
msh> set appletalk {up | down}
msh> set netware {up | down}
msh> set smb {up | down}
msh> set scsiprint {up | down}
```

- scsiprint is available when the optional IEEE 1394 interface board is installed.

```
msh> set ip1394 {up | down}
```

- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.

```
msh> set lpr {up | down}
msh> set ftp {up | down}
msh> set rsh {up | down}
msh> set diprint {up | down}
msh> set web {up | down}
msh> set snmp {up | down}
msh> set ssl {up | down}
```

- If Secured Sockets Layer (SSL, an encryption protocol) function is not available for the printer, you cannot use the function by enabling it.

```
msh> set nrs {up | down}
msh> set rfu {up | down}
msh> set ipp {up | down}
msh> set http {up | down}
msh> set rendezvous {up | down}
```

show

Use the “show” command to display network interface board configuration settings.

❖ View settings

```
msh> show
```

- If “-p” is added, you can view settings one by one.

Reference

For details about the information displayed, see p.219 “Configuring the Network Interface Board”.

slp

Use “slp” command to configure SLP settings.

msh> slp ttl “ttl_val”

- You can search the NetWare server using SLP in the PureIP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 and Netware 6/6.5. Using the “slp” command, you can configure the value of TTL which can be used by SLP multicast packet.
- The default value of TTL is 1. A search is executed only within a local segment. If the router does not support multicast, the settings are not available even if the TTL value is increased.
- The acceptable TTL value is between 1 and 255.

smb

Use the “smb” command to configure or delete the computer or workgroup name for SMB.

❖ **Computer Name settings**

msh> smb comp

- Set computer name using up to 15 characters. Names beginning with “RNP” or “rnp” cannot be entered.

❖ **Working Group Name settings**

msh> smb group

- Set workgroup name using up to 15 characters

❖ **Comment settings**

msh> smb comment

- Set comment using up to 31 characters

❖ **Notify print job completion**

msh> smb notif {on | off}

- To notify print job completion, specify “on”. Otherwise, specify “off”

❖ **Deleting Computer Name**

msh> smb clear comp

❖ **Deleting Group Name**

msh> smb clear group

❖ **Deleting Comment**

msh> smb clear comment

❖ **Protocol settings**

msh> smb protocol [netbeui {up | down} | tcpip {up | down}]

- Enable or disable NetBEUI and TCP/IP. Specify “up” to enable, and “down” to disable.

snmp

Use the “snmp” command to display and edit SNMP configuration settings such as the community name.

❖ **View settings**

msh> snmp

- Default access settings 1 is as follows:
  Community name:public
  IP address:0.0.0.0
  Access type:read-only / trap off
- Default access settings 2 is as follows:
  Community name:admin
  IP address:0.0.0.0
  Access type:read-write / trap off
- If “-p” is added, you can view settings one by one.
- To display the current community, specify its registration number.

❖ **Display**

msh> snmp ?

❖ **Community name configuration**

msh> snmp “number” name “community_name”

- You can configure ten SNMP access settings numbered 1-10.
- The printer cannot be accessed from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or SmartDeviceMonitor for Client if “public” is not registered in numbers 1-10. When changing the community name, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and SNMP Setup Tool to correspond with printer settings.
- The community name can be entered using up to 15 characters.

❖ **Deleting community name**

msh> snmp “number” clear name

❖ **Access type configuration**

msh> snmp “number” type “access_type”

Access type	Type of access permission
no	not accessible

Access type	Type of access permission
read	read only
write	read and write
trap	user is notified of trap messages

❖ **Protocol configuration**

msh> snmp {ip | ipx} {on | off}

- Use the following command to set protocols “active” or “inactive”: If you set a protocol “inactive”, all access settings for that protocol are disabled.
- Specify “ip” for TCP/IP, or “ipx” for IPX/SPX.
- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.
- IEEE 1394 interface is available for TCP/IP only.

❖ **Configuration of protocol for each registration number**

msh> snmp “number” active {ip | ipx} {on | off}

- To change the protocol of access settings, use the following command. However, if you have disabled a protocol with the above command, activating it here has no effect.

❖ **Access configuration**

msh> snmp “number” {ip/addr | ipx} “address”

- You can configure a host address according to the protocol used.
- The network interface board accepts requests only from hosts that have addresses with access types of “read-only” or “read-write”. Enter “0” to have network interface board accept requests from any host without requiring a specific type of access.
- Enter a host address to deliver “trap” access type information to.
- To specify TCP/IP, enter “ip” followed by a space, and then the IP address.
- To specify IPX/SPX, enter “ipx” followed by a space, the IPX address followed by a decimal, and then the MAC address of the network interface board.

❖ **sysLocation configuration**

msh> snmp location

❖ **Deleting sysLocation**

msh> snmp clear location

❖ **sysContact setting**

msh> snmp contact

❖ **Deleting sysContact**

```
msh> snmp clear contact
```

❖ **SNMP v1v2 function configuration**

```
msh> snmp v1v2 {on | off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **SNMP v3 function configuration**

```
msh> snmp v3 {on | off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **SNMP TRAP configuration**

```
msh> snmp trap {v1 | v2 | v3} {on | off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **Remote Configuration Authorization configuration**

```
msh> snmp remote {on | off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **SNMP v3 TRAP configuration display**

```
msh> snmp v3trap
msh> snmp v3trap {1- 5}
```

- If a number from 1-5 is entered, settings are displayed for that number only.

❖ **Configuring a sending address for SNMP v3 TRAP**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} {ip| ipx} address
```

❖ **Configuring a sending protocol for SNMP v3 TRAP**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} active {ip/addr | ipx} {on | off}
```

❖ **Configuring a user account for SNMP v3 TRAP**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} account account_name
```

- Enter an account name using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

❖ **Deleting an SNMP v3 TRAP user account**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} clear account
```

❖ **Configuring an SNMP v3 encryption algorithm**

```
msh> snmp v3auth {md5 | sha1}
```

❖ **Configuring SNMP v3 encryption**

```
msh> snmp v3priv {auto | on}
```

- If you select “auto”, the print job will be encrypted when encryption is possible.
- If you select “on”, Clear Text communication is not possible, and encryption password must be set before encryption communication can be used.

Note

❒ Encryption is possible when the security option is installed correctly and the password is specified.

sntp

The printer clock can be synchronized with a NTP server clock using Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP). Use the “sntp” command to change SNTP settings.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> sntp
```

❖ **NTP server address configuration**

You can specify the IP address of the NTP server.

```
msh> sntp server "IP_address"
```

❖ **Interval configuration**

```
msh> sntp interval "polling_time"
```

- You can specify the interval at which the printer synchronizes with the operator-specified NTP server. The default is 60 minutes.
- The interval can be entered between 16 and 16,384 minutes.
- If you set 0, the printer synchronizes with the NTP server only when you turn the printer on. After that, the printer does not synchronize with the NTP server.

❖ **Time-zone configuration**

```
msh> sntp timezone "+/-hour_time"
```

- You can specify the time difference between the printer clock and NTP server clock. Time is in 24-hour format.

spoolsw

Use the “spoolsw” command to configure Job Spool settings.

You can only specify diprint, lpr, ipp, ftp and smb protocol.

- The “spoolsw” command for configuring Job Spool settings is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

❖ **View settings**

The Job Spool setting appears.

```
msh> spoolsw
```

❖ **Job Spool setting**

```
msh> spoolsw spool {on | off}
```

Note

❒ Specify “on” to enable Job Spool, or “off” to disable it.

❖ **Resetting Job spool setting**

```
msh> spoolsw clear job {on | off}
```

- When the printer power is cut during job spooling, this determines whether to reprint the spooled job.

❖ **Protocol configuration**

```
msh> spoolsw diprint {on | off}
msh> spoolsw lpr {on | off}
msh> spoolsw ipp {on | off}
msh> spoolsw smb {on | off}
msh> spoolsw ftp {on | off}
```

- You can specify the settings for diprint, lpr, ipp, and smb.

sprint

Use the “sprint” command to make settings for IEEE 1394 (SCSI print).

❖ **View settings**

IEEE 1394 (SCSI print) settings are displayed.

```
msh> sprint
```

❖ **Bidirectional configuration for IEEE 1394 (SCSI print)**

Use this setting to set IEEE 1394 (SCSI print) bidirectional.
The default is “on”.

```
msh> sprint bidi {on | off}
```

status

The printer status can be checked using the following command:

❖ **Messages**

```
msh> status
```

Reference

For details, see p.210 “Current Printer Status”.

syslog

Use the “syslog” command to display the information stored in the printer's system log.

❖ **View message**

```
msh> syslog
```

Note

❒ For details about the information displayed, see p.225 “System Log Information”.

upnp

Use the “upnp” command to display and configure the universal plug and play.

❖ **Public URL display**

```
msh> upnp url
```

❖ **Public URL configuration**

```
msh> upnp url “string”
```

- Enter the URL string in the character string.

web

Use the “web” command to display and configure parameters on Web Image Monitor.

❖ **View Settings**

```
msh> web
```

❖ **URL Configuration**

You can set URLs linked by clicking **[URL]** on Web Image Monitor.
Specify “1” or “2” for x as the number corresponding to the URL. Up to two URLs can be registered and specified.

```
msh> web url http://”The URL or IP address you want to register”/
```

❖ **Deleting URLs registered as link destinations**

```
msh> web x clear url
```

Specify “1” or “2” for x as the corresponding number to the URL.

❖ **Link name configuration**

You can enter the name for **[URL]** that appears on Web Image Monitor.
Specify “1” or “2” for x as the corresponding number to the link name.

```
msh> web name "Name you want to display"
```

❖ **Deleting URL names registered as link destinations**

```
msh> web x clear name
```

Specify "1" or "2" for x as the number corresponding to the link name.

❖ **Help URL Configuration**

You can set URLs linked by clicking **[Help]** or **[?]** on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web help http://"Help URL or IP address"/help/
```

❖ **Deleting Help URL**

```
msh> web clear help
```

wiconfig

Use the "wiconfig" command to make settings for IEEE 802.11b.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> wiconfig
```

❖ **View IEEE 802.11b settings**

```
msh> wiconfig cardinfo
```

- If IEEE 802.11b is not working correctly, its information is not displayed.

❖ **Configuration**

```
msh> wiconfig "parameter"
```

Parameter	Value configured
mode [ap|adhoc|802.11adhoc]	You can set the infrastructure mode (ap) , the 802.11 Ad hoc mode (802.11adhoc), or the ad hoc mode (adhoc). The default is ad hoc mode.
ssid **ID value**	You can make settings for the SSID in the infrastructure mode. Usable characters are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes). An SSID value is set automatically to the nearest access point if no setting is made. If no setting is made for the ad hoc mode, the same value as for the infrastructure mode or an ASSID value is automatically set.

Parameter	Value configured
channel frequency **channel no.**	You can enable or disable the WEP function. To enable the WEP function, specify [on]; to disable it, specify [off]. To start the WEP function, enter the correct WEP key.
enc [on|off]	You can enable or disable the WEP function. To enable the WEP function, specify [on]; to disable it, specify [off]. To start the WEP function, enter the correct WEP key.
key [**key value**] val [1|2|3|4]	You can specify the WEP key when entering in hexadecimal. With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 10 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 26 digit hexadecimals. Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with “val”. When a WEP is specified by key, the WEP specified by key phrase is overwritten. To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. You can omit the numbers with “val”. The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions.
keyphrase [**phrase**] val [1|2|3|4]	You can specify the WEP key when entering in ASCII. With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 10 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 26 digit hexadecimals. Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with “val”. When a WEP is specified by key phrase, the WEP specified by key is overwritten. To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. You can omit the numbers with “val”. The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions.
encval [1|2|3|4]	You can specify which of the four WEP keys is used for packet encoding. “1” is set if a number is not specified.

Parameter	Value configured
auth [open|shared]	You can set an authorization mode when using WEP. The specified value and authorized mode are as follows: open: open system authorized (default) shared: shared key authorized rate
rate [auto|11m|5.5m|2m|1m]	You can set the IEEE 802.11b transmitting speed. The speed you specify here is the speed at which data is sent. You can receive data at any speed. auto: automatically set (default) 11m: 11 Mbps fixed 5.5m: 5.5 Mbps fixed 2m: 2 Mbps fixed 1m: 1 Mbps fixed

wins

Use the “wins” command to configure WINS server settings.

❖ Viewing settings

msh> wins

- If the IP address obtained from DHCP differs from the WINS IP address, the DHCP address is the valid address.

❖ Configuration

msh> wins “interface_name” {on | off}

- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ Address configuration

Use the following command to configure a WINS server IP address:

msh> wins “interface_name” {primary|secondary} “IP address”

- Use the “primary” command to configure a primary WINS server IP address.
- Use the “secondary” command to configure a secondary WINS server IP address.
- Do not use “255.255.255.255” as the IP address.

❖ **NBT (NetBIOS over TCP/IP) Scope ID Selection**

You can specify the NBT scope ID.

```
msh> wins “interface_name” scope “scope ID”
```

- The scope ID can be entered using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- ip1394 can be specified only when the IEEE 1394 interface is installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
ip1394	IEEE 1394 interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

SNMP

The SNMP agent operating on UDP and IPX is incorporated into the built-in Ethernet board and optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit of this printer. Also, the SNMP agent operating on UDP is incorporated in the optional IEEE 1394 interface board.

Using the SNMP manager, you can get information about the printer.

Important

❒ If you changed the printer's community name, change the configuration of the connected computer accordingly, using SNMP Setup Tool. For details, see SNMP Setup Tool Help.

The default community names are **[public]** and **[admin]**. You can get MIB information using these community names.

❖ **Start SNMP Setup Tool**

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0:
  Click the **[Start]** button.
  Point to **[SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin]** on the **[Programs]** menu.
  Click **[SNMP Setup Tool]**.
- Windows XP:
  Click the **[Start]** button.
  Point to **[SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin]** on the **[All Programs]** menu.
  Click **[SNMP Setup Tool]**.

❖ **Supported MIBs(SNMPv1/v2)**

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB

❖ **Supported MIBs(SNMPv3)**

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB
- SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB
- SNMP-TARGET-MIB
- SNMP-NOTIFICATION-MIB
- SNMP-USER-BASED-SM-MIB
- SNMP-VIEW-BASED-ACM-MIB

Getting Printer Information over the Network

This section explains details of each item displayed in the printer status and information.

Current Printer Status

The printer status can be checked using the following commands:

- UNIX: Use the “lpq” command and “rsh”, “rcp”, and “ftp” parameters.
- mshell: Use the “status” command.

Messages	Description
Access Restricted	The job was canceled because user have no authority.
Add staples (Booklet: Back)	The staple of booklet finisher (back) is exhausted.
Add staples (Booklet: Both)	The staple of booklet finisher is exhausted.
Add staples (Booklet: Front)	The staple of booklet finisher (front) is exhausted.
Adjusting...	The machine is initializing or calibrating.
Call Service Center	There is a malfunction in the machine.
Canceled	The job is reset.
Canceling Job...	The job is being reset.
Card/Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for prepaid card or key.
Coin or amount not inserted	The machine is waiting for coin to be inserted.
Coin/Key Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for coin or key counter.
Configuring...	Setting is being changed.
Cover Open: ADF	The document feeder is open.
Cover Open: Duplex Unit	The cover of the duplex unit is open.
Cover Open: Finisher	The cover of Finisher is open.
Cover Open: Front	The front cover is open.
Cover Open: Front/Left	The front cover or left cover is open.
Cover Open: Paper Exit / Rear	The paper exit cover or rear cover is open.
Cover Open: Right	The right cover is open.
Cover Open: Top	The top cover is open.
Data Size Error	The data size error occurred.

Messages	Description
Empty: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Cyan Toner	The cyan toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Magenta Toner	The magenta toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Yellow Toner	The yellow toner cartridge is almost empty.
Energy Saver Mode	The machine is in Energy Saver Mode.
Error	An error has occurred.
Error at Printer: Red LED	An error has occurred.
Error in Printer	An error has occurred.
Error: Address Book	An error has occurred in the data of the address book.
Error: Command Transmission	An error has occurred in the machine.
Error: DIMM Value	A memory error occurred.
Error: Ethernet Board	An Ethernet board error has occurred.
Error: HDD Board	A hard disk drive board error has occurred.
Error: IEEE1394 Board	An IEEE 1394 interface board error has occurred.
Error: Memory Switch	A memory switch error has occurred.
Error: Optional Font	An error has occurred in the font file of the machine.
Error: Optional RAM	An error has occurred in the optional memory unit.
Error: Parallel I/F Board	An error has occurred in the parallel interface.
Error: PDL	An error has occurred in the page description language.
Error: USB Interface	An error has occurred in the USB interface.
Error: Wireless Card	Wireless card is not inserted during start up, or the IEEE 802.11b interface unit or the wireless card is taken out after start up.
Error: Wireless Card or Board	An error has occurred in the IEEE 802.11b interface unit.
Exceed Booklet Stapling Limit	The printing has exceeded the stapling limit of the booklet finisher.
Full: Copy Tray	The output paper tray is full.
Full: Finisher	Finisher tray is full.
Full: Finisher Shift Tray	Shift tray of Finisher is full.
Full: Finisher Shift Tray 1, 2	The shift tray 1 and 2 of Finisher are full.
Full: Finisher Upper Tray	The upper tray of Finisher is full.

Messages	Description
Full: Hole Punch Receptacle	Punch Chip receptacle for hole punch is full.
Full: Standard Tray	The output paper tray is full.
Full: Waste Toner	Waste toner is full.
Full: Waste Toner Bottle	Waste toner bottle is full.
Hex Dump Mode	It is a hex dump mode.
Immed. Trans. not connected	It did not connect directly with the other party of the transmission.
Immediate Transmission Failed	An error has occurred while transmitting directly.
In Use: Copier	The copier is being used.
In Use: Fax	The fax is being used.
In Use: Finisher	Other functions is using Finisher.
In Use: Input Tray	Other functions is using the input tray.
In Use: Staple Unit	Other functions is using the staple unit.
Independent-supplier Toner	Toner that is not recommended is set.
Key Card not inserted	The machine is waiting for key card to be inserted.
Key Card/Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for key card or key counter to be inserted.
Key Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for key counter to be left in it.
Loading Toner...	Toner is being supplied.
Low: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Cyan Toner	The cyan toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Magenta Toner	The magenta toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Toner	The black toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Yellow Toner	The yellow toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Malfunction: Booklet Processor	There is a problem with booklet finisher.
Malfunction: Ext. Charge Unit	There is a problem with external charge unit.
Malfunction: Finisher	There is a problem with Finisher.
Malfunction: Interposer	There is a problem with Interposer.
Malfunction: LargeCapacity Tray	There is a problem with LargeCapacity tray.
Malfunction: Output Tray	There is a problem with output tray.

Messages	Description
Malfunction: Staple Unit	There is a problem with the staple unit.
Malfunction: Tray 1	There is a problem with tray 1.
Malfunction: Tray 2	There is a problem with tray 2.
Malfunction: Tray 3	There is a problem with tray 3.
Malfunction: Tray 4	There is a problem with tray 4.
Malfunction: Z-folding unit	There is a problem with the Z fold unit.
Memory Low: Copy	Memory shortage has occurred while the copy was operating.
Memory Low: Data Storage	Memory shortage has occurred while the document was being accumulated.
Memory Low: Fax Scanning	Memory shortage has occurred while transmitting the fax.
Memory Low: Scanning	Memory shortage has occurred while the scanner was working.
Miscellaneous Error	Other error has occurred.
Mismatch: Paper Size	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size.
Mismatch: Paper Size and Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size and type.
Mismatch: Paper Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected type.
Near Replacing: Black PCU	Prepare the new black photoconductor unit.
Near Replacing: Color PCU	Prepare the new color photoconductor unit.
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit C	Prepare the new development unit (cyan).
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit K	Prepare the new development unit (black).
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit M	Prepare the new development unit (magenta).
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit Y	Prepare the new development unit (yellow).
Near Replacing: Fusing Unit	Prepare the new fusing unit.
Near Replacing: Maintenance Kit	Prepare the new maintenance kit.
Near Replacing: Transfer Unit	Prepare the new transfer unit.
Nearly Full: Waste Toner	Waste toner bottle is nearly full.
Need more Staples	Stapler has almost run out of staples.
No Paper: Interposer Tray	There is no paper in interposer unit.
No Paper: LCT	There is no paper in Large Capacity tray.
No Paper: Selected Tray	There is no paper in specified tray.
No Paper: Tray 1	There is no paper in tray 1.
No Paper: Tray 2	There is no paper in tray 2.

Messages	Description
No Paper: Tray 3	There is no paper in tray 3.
No Paper: Tray 4	There is no paper in tray 4.
Not Detected: B2 Lever	B2 lever is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Black Toner	Black toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Cyan Toner	Cyan toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (C)	The development unit (cyan) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (K)	The development unit (black) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (M)	The development unit (magenta) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (Y)	The development unit (yellow) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Duplex Feed Unit	The duplex feed unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Finisher	Finisher is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Fusing Unit	The fusing unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Input Tray	The paper feed tray is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Interposer	Interposer unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: LCT	A large amount of paper feed tray is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Magenta Toner	Magenta toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (C)	The photoconductor unit (cyan) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (K)	The photoconductor unit (black) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (M)	The photoconductor unit (magenta) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (Y)	The photoconductor unit (yellow) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Toner Magazine	The toner cartridge is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Transfer Roller	The transfer roler is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Transfer Unit	The transfer unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 1	Tray 1 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 2	Tray 2 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 3	Tray 3 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 4	Tray 4 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: WasteToner Bottle	Waste toner bottle is not correctly set.

Messages	Description
Not Detected: Yellow Toner	Yellow toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Z-fold'g Internal	The Z fold unit is not correctly set.
Not Reached, Data Deleted	Unreached job is deleted.
Not Reached, Data Removed	Unreached job is deleted.
Not Reached, Data Stored	Unreached job is preserved.
Offline	Printer is offline.
Original on Exposure Glass	The original remains on the exposure glass.
Panel Off Mode	The machine is in Panel-Off mode.
Panel Off Mode>>Printing ava.	The machine is in Control Panel-Off mode.
Paper in Duplex Unit	The paper remains in the duplex unit.
Paper in Finisher	The paper remains in Finisher.
Paper Misfeed: ADF	The paper has jammed in Document Feeder.
Paper Misfeed: Duplex Unit	The paper has jammed in the duplex unit.
Paper Misfeed: Input Tray	The paper has jammed in the input tray.
Paper Misfeed: Internal/Output	The paper has jammed inside the machine.
Paper Misfeed: Output Tray	The paper has jammed in output tray.
Paper on Finisher Shift Tray 2	The paper remains in Finisher Shift Tray 2.
Paper on FinisherShiftTray1, 2	The paper remains in Finisher Shift Tray 1 and 2.
Prepaid Card not inserted	The machine is waiting for prepaid card to be inserted.
Print Complete	The print was completed.
Printing	Printing is in progress.
Processing	Data is being processed.
RC Gate Connection Error	Failed connection with RC Gate.
Ready	The machine is ready to print.
Replace Black PCU	It is time to replace the black photoconductor unit.
Replace Charger	It is time to replace the charger kit.
Replace Cleaning Web	It is time to replace the Cleaning Web.
Replace Color PCU	It is time to replace the photoconductor unit (color).
Replace Develop. Unit	It is time to replace the development unit.
Replace Develop. Unit (Black)	It is time to replace the development unit (black).

Messages	Description
Replace Develop. Unit (Color)	It is time to replace the development unit (color).
Replace Develop. Unit (Cyan)	It is time to replace the development unit (cyan).
Replace Develop. Unit (Magenta)	It is time to replace the development unit (magenta).
Replace Develop. Unit (Yellow)	It is exchange time of the development unit (yellow).
Replace Fusing Unit	It is time to replace the fusing unit.
Replace Maintenance Kit	It is time to replace the maintenance kit.
Replace PCU	It is time to replace the photoconductor unit.
Replace Transfer Belt	It is time to replace the transfer belt.
SD Card Authentication failed	SD card authentication failed.
Setting Remotely	The RDS setting is being processed.
Skipped due to Error	Skipped the error.
Storage Complete	The storage is complete.
Storage Failed	The storage has failed.
Supplies Order Call failed	The supply order call has failed.
Suspend / Resume Key Error	Finisher stop button was pressed.
Transmission Aborted	The transmission was interrupted.
Transmission Complete	The transmission completion was completed.
Transmission Failed	The transmission has failed.
Tray Error: Chaptering	The paper feed tray specification error has occurred because chaptering as well as the normal paper use the same tray for printing.
Tray Error: Duplex Printing	Selected paper tray cannot be used for duplex printing.
Unit Left Open: ADF	Document feeder is opened.
Warming Up...	The machine is warming up.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands, see UNIX Supplement.

❒ Check the error contents that may be printed in the configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “List/Test Print Menu”.

Printer configuration

You can check the printer configuration using telnet.

This section explains the checking procedure for input/output tray and printer language.

- UNIX: Use the “info” command and “rsh”, “rcp”, and “ftp” parameters.
- mshell: Use the “info” command.

❖ Input Tray

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the paper tray
Name	Name of the paper tray
PaperSize	Size of paper loaded in the paper tray
status	Current status of the paper tray • Normal:Normal • NoInputTray: No tray • PaperEnd:No paper

❖ Output Tray

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the output tray
Name	Name of the output tray
status	Current status of the output tray • Normal:Normal • PaperExist:Paper exist • OverFlow:Paper is full • Error:Other errors

❖ Emulation

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the printer language used by the printer
Name	Name of the printer language used in the printer
Version	Version of the printer language

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

❒ For details about mshell “info” commands, see p.190 “info”.

Understanding the Displayed Information

This section explains how to read status information returned by the network interface board.

Print Job Information

Use the following command to display print job information:

- UNIX: Use the “info” command and “rsh“, “rcp”, and “ftp” parameters.
- mshell: Use the “info” command.

Item	Description
Rank	Print job status. • Active Printing or preparing for printing. • Waiting Waiting to be transferred to the printer.
Owner	Print request user name.
Job	Print request number.
Files	The name of the document.
Total Size	The size of the data (spooled). The default is 0 bytes.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

❒ For details about mshell “info” commands, see p.190 “info”.

Print Log Information

This is a record of the most recent 16 jobs printed.

Use the following command to display print log information:

- UNIX: Use the “prnlog” command and “rsh”, “rcp”, and “ftp” parameters.
- telnet : Use the “prnlog” command. See p.193 “prnlog”

Item	Description
ID	Print request ID.
User	Print request user name.
Page	Number of pages printed

Item	Description
Result	Print Request Result Communication Result • OK Print was completed normally. However, the print result may not be as required due to printer problems. • NG Printing was not completed normally. • Canceled An “rcp”, “rsh”, or “lpr” command print request was canceled, possibly due to the printing application. Not applicable to the “ftp” or “rprinter” command.
Time	Time the print requested was received. Time of print request reception
User ID	Printer driver-configured User ID. Appears when the print request ID is specified.
JobName	Name of the document for printing Appears when the print request ID is specified.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

❒ For details about mshell prnlog commands, see p.193 “prnlog”.

Configuring the Network Interface Board

Use the following command to display network interface board settings:

- telnet : Use the “show” command.

Item	Description
Common	
mode	
Protocol Up/Down	**[up]** means “active” and **[down]** means “inactive”.
appletalk	
TCP/IP	
netware	
SMB	
IP over 1394	
SCSI print	
Ethernet interface	Internal version number
Syslog priority	
NVRAM version	Internal version number

Item	Description
Device name	Printer name
Comment	Comment
location	Location of the printer in the SNMP and Rendezvous information
Contact	Administrator information for the printer and contact information in the SNMP information
Soft switch	
appletalk	
mode	AppleTalk protocol in selection
Net	Network number
Object	Macintosh printer name
Type	Type of printer
Zone	Name of the zone that the printer belongs to
TCP/IP	
mode	**[up]** means “active” and **[down]** means “inactive”.
ftp	
lpr	
rsh	
telnet	
diprint	
web	
http	
ftpc	
snmp	
ipp	
autonet	
rendezvous	
ssl	
rfu	
nbt	
EncapType	Frame type
dhcp	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (on/off)
Host name	
Address	IP address
netmask	Subnet mask

Item	Description
broadcast	Broadcast address
DNS Domain	DNS domain type
gateway	Default gateway address
Access Range[☆]	Access control range
Time server	NTP server address
Time Zone	NTP server time difference
Time server polling time	NTP server interval
SYSLOG server	
Home page URL	URL of homepage.
Home page link name	URL of home page
netware	
EncapType	Frame type
RPRINTER number	Remote printer number
Print server name	Print server name
File server name	Name of the connect file server
Context name	Context of print server
Switch	
mode	Active mode
NDS/Bindery	(this value is fixed)
Packet negotiation	
Login Mode	Login mode
Print job timeout	Packet timeout
protocol	Protocol used
SAP interval time	
NDS Tree Name	NDS tree name
SMB	
Switch	
mode	(this value is fixed)
Direct print	(this value is fixed)
Notification	Notification of print job completion
Workgroup name	Name of the workgroup
Computer name	Name of the computer
Comment	Comment
Share name[1]	Share name (model of the printer)

Item	Description
protocol	
IEEE 802.11b	
Device name	Printer name
dhcp	DHCP (on/off)
Address	IP address
netmask	Subnet mask
broadcast	Broadcast address
DNS Domain	DNS domaintype
ssid	SSID used
Channel range	Channels available for use
Channel	Channel used
Communication mode	IEEE 802.11b interface transmitting mode
Authentication	
TX Rate	IEEE 802.11b interface speed
WEP encryption	WEP enabled or disabled
Encryption key	WEP key
IP over 1394	
Host name	
DHCP	DHCP (on/off)
Address	IP address
netmask	Subnet mask
broadcast	Broadcast address
DNS Domain	
SCSI print	
Bidi.	Bidirectional setting (on/off)
Bluetooth	
Bluetooth mode	Bluetooth connection mode
UPnP	
URL	
dns	
Server[X]:	IP address of the DNS server
Selected DNS Server	Selected DNS server
Domain Name	
ether	Domain name on an Ethernet connection

Item	Description
wlan	Domain name on a wireless LAN connection
ip1394	
rendezvous	
Computer Name	Computer name
Rendezvous Name (ether)	Rendezvous name on an Ethernet connection
Rendezvous Name (wlan)	Rendezvous name on a wireless LAN connection
Rendezvous Name (ip1394)	Rendezvous name on an IP over 1394 connection
location	Location of the printer
Priority (diprint)	diprint priority number
Priority (lpr)	lpr priority number
Priority (ipp)	ipp priority number
IP TTL	IP TTL value
LinkLocal Route for Multi I/F: Ethernet (ether)	[IEEE 802.11b (wlan)] appears when IEEE 802.11b is selected. [IP over 1394 (ip1394)] appears when IEEE1394 is selected.
DDNS	
ether	Dynamic DNS function on an Ethernet connection (on/off)
wlan	Dynamic DNS function on a wireless LAN connection (on/off)
ip1394	Dynamic DNS function on an IP over 1394 connection (on/off)
wins	
ether	
Primary WINS	IP address of the primary WINS server on an Ethernet connection
Secondary WINS	IP address of the secondary WINS server on an Ethernet connection
ip1394	
Primary WINS	IP address of the primary WINS server on an IP over 1394 connection
Secondary WINS	IP address of the secondary WINS server on an IP over 1394 connection
SNMP	
SNMPv1v2	
SNMPv3	
protocol	

Item	Description
v1Trap v2Trap v3Trap SNMPv1v2Remoto Setting SNMPv3 Privacy	
Shell mode	Mode of the remote maintenance tool

Message List

This is a list of messages that appear in the printer's system log. The system log can be viewed using the “syslog” command.

System Log Information

Use the following command to display the system log information:

- UNIX: Use the “syslog” command and “rsh”, “rcp”, and “ftp” parameters.
- telnet : Use the “syslog” command.

Message	Problem and solutions
Access to NetWare server <file server name> denied. Either there is no account for this print server on the NetWare server or the password was incorrect.	(In the print server mode) Login to the file server failed. Make sure that the print server is registered on the file server. If a password is specified for the print server, delete it.
add_sess: bad trap addr:<IpAddress>, community:<community name>	The IP address (0.0.0.0.) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IP address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess: community<community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_ipx: bad trap addr: <IPXaddress>, community:<community name>	The IPX address (00:00:00:00:00:00) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPX address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_ipx: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
ANONYMOUS FTP LOGIN FROM <IP address>, <password>	An anonymous login has been made with a password <password> from the host <IP address>.
anpd start. (AppleTalk)	The ANPD (AppleTalk Network Package Daemon) service has started.
Attach FileServer= <file server name>	Connection to the file server as the nearest server has been established.
Attach to print queue <print queue name>	(In the print server mode) Attached to the print queue.
Cannot create service connection	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the file server has not been established. The number of file server users may have exceeded the maximum capacity of the file server.
Cannot find rprinter (<print server name>/<printer number>)	The printer with the number displayed on the print server does not exist. Make sure that the printer number is registered on the print server.

Message	Problem and solutions
Change IP address from DHCP Server.	The IP address changes when DHCP lease is renewed. To always assign the same IP address, set a static IP address to the DHCP server.
child process exec error! (process name)	The network service failed to start. Turn the printer off and then on. If this does not work, contact your service or sales representative.
Connected DHCP Server(<DHCP server address>).	The IP address was successfully received from the DHCP server.
connection from <IP address>	Login was from the host IP address.
Could not attach to FileServer<error number>	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the file server has not been established. The file server has refused the connection. Check the file server configuration.
Could not attach to PServer<print server>	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the print server has not been established. The print server has refused the connection. Check the print server configuration.
Current Interface Speed:xxxMbps	Speed of the network (10 Mbps or 100 Mbps)
Current IP address <current IP address>	The IP address <current IP address> was received from the dhcp server.
Current IPX address<IPX address>	Current ipx address
DHCP lease time expired.	DHCP lease time has expired. The printer tries to discover the DHCP server again. The IP address until now becomes invalid.
DHCP server not found.	The DHCP server was not found. Make sure that the DHCP is on the network.
dhcpcd start.	The DHCPCD service (dhcp client service) has started.
Duplicate IP=<IP address>(from <MAC address>).	The same IP address is used. Each IP address must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in [MAC address].
Established SPX Connection with PServer,(RPSocket=<socket number>, connID=<connection ID>)	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the print server has been established.
exiting	The lpd service has ended and the system is exiting the process.
Exit pserver	(In the print server mode) The print server function is disabled because the necessary print server settings have not been made.
Frametype =<frame type name>	The frame type name is configured to be used on NetWare.
httpd start.	The httpd service has started.

Message	Problem and solutions
inetd start.	The inetd service has started.
IPP cancel-job: permission denied.	The printer could not authenticate the name of the user attempting to cancel a job.
ipp disable.	Printing with ipp is disabled.
ipp enable.	Printing with ipp is enabled.
IPP job canceled. jobid=%d.	The spooled job was canceled due to error or user request.
LeaseTime=<lease time>(sec), Renew-Time=<renew time>(sec).	The resource lease time received from the DHCP server is displayed in [lease time] in seconds. The renewal time is displayed in [renew time] in seconds.
Login to fileserver <file server name> (<IPX|IP>,<NDS|BINDERY|NDS|BINDERY>)	(In the print server mode) Login to the file server is in the NDS or BINDERY mode.
multid start.	Data transmission service for multiprotocols has started.
nbstart start. (NetBEUI)	The service for NetBEUI protocol stack setting has started.
NBT Registration Broadcast(<NetBIOS name>)	Use a local broadcast to map the NetBIOS name with the IP address.
nbtd start.	The nbtd service has started (available only in the DHCP mode).
NetBEUI Computer Name =<computer name>	The NetBEUI computer name is specified.
nmsd start. (NetBEUI)	The nmsd (Name Server Daemon) service has started.
npriter start. (NetWare)	(In the remote printer mode) The NetWare service has started.
nwstart start. (NetWare)	The service for NetWare protocol stack setting has started.
Open log file <file name>	(In the print server mode) The specified log file has been opened.
papd start. (AppleTalk)	The AppleTalk print service has started.
phy release file open failed.	Replacing the network interface board is required. Contact your sales or service representative.
Print queue <print queue name> cannot be serviced by printer 0, <print server name>	(In the print server mode) The print queue cannot be established. Make sure that print queue exists on the specified file server.
Print server <print server name>has no printer.	(In the print server mode) The printer is not assigned to the print server. Using NWadmin, assign the printer, and then restart it.
print session full	No more print jobs can be accepted.

Message	Problem and solutions
Printer <printer name> has no queue	(In the print server mode) The print queue is not assigned to the printer. Using NWadmin, assign the print queue to the printer, and then restart it.
pserver start. (NetWare)	(In the print server mode) The NetWare service has started.
Required computer name (<Computer name>) is duplicated name	The start job found the computer name by adding the computer name to the suffix (0,1...). Set a new computer name that is unique.
Required file server (<file server name>) not found	The required file server is not found.
restarted.	The lpd service has started.
sap enable, saptype=<SAP type>, sapname=<SAP name>	The SAP function has started. The SAP packet is issued to advertise the service on the SAP table on the NetWare server.
session <community name> already defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
session_ipx <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
Set context to <NDS context name>	An NDS context name has been set.
shutdown signal received. network service rebooting...	The network service is rebooting.
smbd start. (NetBEUI)	The smbd service has started.
SMTPC: failed to get smtp server ip-address.	The SMTP server IP address could not be obtained. This could be because: • The specified DNS server could not be found. • No connection to the network has been established. • The specified DNS server could not be found. • An incorrect DNS server is specified. • The specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server. timeout.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to timeout. This could be because: • The specified SMTP server name is incorrect. • No connection to the network has been established. • The network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server.

Message	Problem and solutions
SMTPC: refused connect by smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server is denied. This could be because: • A server other than the SMTP server has been specified. • The specified SMTP server port number is incorrect.
SMTPC: no smtp server. connection close.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to no response from SMTP. This could be because: • A server other than the SMTP server has been specified. • The specified SMTP server port number is incorrect.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server failed. This could be because: • No connection to the network has been established. • The network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server. • The specified SMTP server name is incorrect. • An incorrect SMTP server is specified. • The specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server. • A server other than the SMTP server has been specified. • The specified SMTP server port number is incorrect.
SMTPC: username or password wasn't correct. [response code] (information)	Connection to the SMTP server failed. This could be because: • The specified SMTP user name is incorrect. • The specified SMTP password is incorrect. Check the SMTP user name and password.
Snmp over ip is ready.	Communication over TCP/IP with snmp is available.
Snmp over IP over 1394 is ready.	Communication over IP over 1394 with snmp is available.
Snmp over ipx is ready.	Communication over IPX with snmp is available.
SNMPD: account is unavailable: Same account name be used.	User account is disabled. This could be because it use the same account name as the administrator account.

Message	Problem and solutions
SNMPD: account is unavailable: The authentication password is not set up.	User account is disabled. This could be because the authentication password is not set, and only the encryption account is set.
SNMPD: account is unavailable: encryption is impossible.	Encryption is not possible and account is disabled. This could be because: • Security option is not installed. • Encryption password has not been specified.
SNMPD: trap account is unavailable.	v3Trap cannot be sent. This could be because the Trap destination account is different from the account specified by the printer.
snmpd start.	The snmpd service has started.
started.	The direct print service has started.
Started.	The rendezvous function is enabled.
Terminated.	The rendezvous function is disabled.
The print server received error <error number> during attempt to log in to the network. Access to the network was denied.Verify that the print server name and password are correct.	Login to the file server failed. The print server is not registered or a password is specified. Register the print server without specifying a password.
WINS name refresh :Server No Response	There was no response to the update request from the print server. Check that the WINS server address is correct and the WINS server is working properly.
WINS name registration/refresh error code(errornumber)	Set unique NetBIOS names. Check that the WINS server address is correct and the WINS server is working properly.
WINS name registration:Server No Response	There was no response to the registration request from the server. Check that the WINS server address is correct and the WINS server is working properly.
WINS server address0.0.0.0	The WINS server was not specified. Specify the WINS server address to match the printer name with WINS.
WINS Server=<WINS server address> NetBIOS Name=<NetBIOS name>	The printer name was successfully registered.
WINS wrong scopeID	The scope ID is incorrect. Specify the correct scope ID.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

❒ For details about “syslog” command, see p.204 “syslog”.

Preparing Printer Server

This section explains how to configure the printer as a Windows network printer. The printer is configured to enabling network clients to use it. When the network printer is connected via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you can set the printing notification function to notify clients of the results of their print jobs.

Important

❒ Under Windows 2000, Windows XP Professional, or Windows Server 2000, to change printer properties in the **[Printer]** folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows NT 4.0, Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator or member of the PowerUsers group.

1. **Open the [Printers] window from the [Start] menu.**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties]. The printer properties appear.**

3. **On the [Sharing] tab, click [Shared as:].**

4. **To share the printer with users using a different version of Windows, click [Additional Drivers...].**

   Note

   ❒ If you have installed an alternative driver by selecting **[Shared as:]** during the printer driver installation, this step can be ignored.

5. **Click [OK]. Close the printer properties.**

Printing notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Follow the procedure below to configure the printer to use the printing notification function of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

Setting the print server

Important

❒ Under Windows 2000, Windows XP Professional, or Windows Server 2000, to change printer properties in the **[Printer]** folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows NT 4.0, Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator or member of the PowerUsers group.

1. **From the [Start] button on the task bar, point to [Program], point to [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Print Server Setting].**

Copyright © 2004, 2005

The print server setting dialog box appears.

2 Select the [Notify Client of Printing] check box, and click [OK].

After print server setting is made, a dialog box appears. Confirm the dialog box content, and click **[OK]**.

Click **[Cancel]** to interrupt the procedure.

3 A dialog box appears for client setting. Click [OK].

The print server setting is complete. Each client must be set to receive print notification.

Note

❒ Current printing jobs restart from the beginning after the spooler pauses briefly.

❒ When the expansion function is not used, the function is automatically set as available.

Setting a Client

1 From the [Start] button on the task bar, point to [Program], point to [Smart-DeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Setting Expansion Function].

A dialog box for setting the expansion function appears.

2 Select the [Use the expansion function] check box in [Notify Printing].

3 Select the [Notify when using the print server] check box.

4 Click [OK].

The dialog box for setting the expansion function closes. The client setting is completed.

Note

❒ Set the printing notification function on the printer driver as well as on SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

Using NetWare

This section describes the setting procedure for network printers in the NetWare environment. In the NetWare environment, you can connect the printer as a "print server" or "remote printer".

❖ **Setting procedure**

- When using the printer as a print server
  ① Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin
  ② Setting the network interface board.
  ③ Turning the printer off and then back on.
- When using the printer as a remote printer
  ① Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
  ② Setting the network interface board.
  ③ Setting NetWare.
  ④ Starting the print server.

Note

❒ This procedure assumes an environment is already prepared for normal NetWare running the printing service setting.

❒ The procedure is explained with the following example settings:

- File server's name …CAREE
- Print server's name …PSERV
- Printer's name …R-PRN
- Queue name …R-QUEUE

❖ **Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin**

To use the printer in a NetWare environment, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin to set the NetWare printing environment.

Note

❒ The NetWare Client provided by Novell is required to set the printing environment using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin under the following environments:

- NDS mode in Windows 95/98/Me
- NDS or Bindery mode in Windows 2000/XP, Windows NT 4.0

Reference

For details about installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see p.168 "Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin".

❖ **Printers listed by SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin**
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin lists printers connected to the network. If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, print configuration page, and then check the printer name.

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server using NetWare 3.x.

1. **Log on to the file server as a supervisor or supervisor equivalent.**
2. **Start NIB Setup Tool from the [Start] menu.**
3. **Click [Wizard], and then click [OK].**
4. **Select a printer you want to configure.**
5. **Enter the printer name in the [Device Name] box and a comment in the [Comment] box, and then click [Next].**
6. **Select the [NetWare] check box, and then click [Next].**
7. **Click [Bindery mode], enter the file server name in the [File Server Name:] box, and then click [Next].**

   In the **[File Server Name:]** box, enter the name of the file server in which a print server is created. You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available file servers.
8. **Enter the print server name in the [Print Server Name] box, the printer name in the [Printer Name] box, and the print queue name in the [Print Queue Name] box, and then click [Next].**
   - In the **[Print Server Name]** box, enter the name of the NetWare print server using up to 47 characters.
   - In the **[Printer Name]** box, enter the name of the NetWare printer.
   - In the **[Print Queue Name]** box, enter the name of the print queue to be added to NetWare.
9. **Check the settings, and then click [Next].**

   The settings are applied, and NIB Setup Tool quits.
10. **Turn the printer off and then on again.**

Note

❒ To check that the configuration is made correctly, enter the following from the command prompt.

```
F:> USERLIST
```

❒ If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.

❒ If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name with the configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “List/Test Print Menu”.

❒ If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the **[Network]** dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.

Reference

For details about changing the printer's frame type (“NW Frame Type”), see “Configuring the Printer”, Setup Guide.

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5)

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server using NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6.0.

Important

❒ When using the printer as a print server in NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6.0, set it to the NDS mode.

❒ When using NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6.0, set the printer as a print server.

1 Log on to the file server as a supervisor or supervisor equivalent.

2 Start NIB Setup Tool on the [Start] menu.

3 Click [Wizard], and then click [OK].

4 Select a printer you want to configure.

5 Enter the printer name in the [Device Name] box and a comment in the [Comment] box, and then click [Next].

6 Select the [NetWare] check box, and then click [Next].

7 Click [NDS Mode], enter the file server name in the [File Server Name:] box, the NDS tree name in the [NDS Tree:] box, and the context in the [NDS Context] box, and then click [Next].

In the **[File Server Name:]** box, enter the name of the file server in which a print server is created. You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available file servers and NDS context names.

In the **[NDS Tree:]** box, enter the name of the NDS tree in which a print server is created using up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Hyphens and underscores can also be used. You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available NDS trees.

For a context, object names are entered from the lowest object with each object separated by a period. For example, if you want to create a print server in NET under DS, enter “NET.DS”.

8 Enter the print server name in the [Print Server Name] box, the printer name in the [Printer Name] box, the print queue name in the [Print Queue Name] box, and the print queue volume in the [Print Queue Volume] box, and then click [Next].

- In the **[Print Server Name]** box, enter the name of the NetWare print server using up to 47 characters.
- In the **[Printer Name]** box, enter the name of the NetWare printer.
- In **[Print Queue Name]** box, enter the print queue volume.
- In **[Print Queue Volume]**, type the print queue volume. For a volume, object names are entered from the lowest object with each object separated by a period. You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available volumes.

9 Check the settings, and then click [Next].

The settings are applied, and NIB Setup Tool quits.

10 Turn the printer off and then on again.

Note

❒ To check that the configuration is made correctly, enter the following from the command prompt.

```
F:> NLIST USER /A/B
```

❒ If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.

❒ If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name with the configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”.

❒ If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the **[Network]** dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.

Reference

For details about changing the printer's frame type (“NW Frame Type”), see “Configuring the Printer”, Setup Guide.

When using the printer in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6.0/6.5, see p.236 “Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment”.

Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1.

Important

- ❒ When creating a queued print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6.0, create a print queue on the file server using NetWare Administrator.
- ❒ This printer is not available as a remote printer for use in a pure IP environment.
- ❒ To use the printer in a pure IP environment, set it to TCP/IP.

Setting up using NIB Setup Tool

1 Log on to the file server as an administrator or administrator equivalent.

2 Start NIB Setup Tool on the [Start] menu.

3 Click [Property Sheet], and then click [OK].

4 Select a printer you want to configure.

5 On the [NetWare] tab, Select [File Server Mode] or [NDS Mode] in the [Logon Mode] area.

When **[File Server Mode]** is selected, the network connection is established based on the string entered in the **[File Server Name(F):]** box.

When **[NDS Mode]** is selected, the network connection is established based on the string entered in the **[NDS Tree:]** box.

6 In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the name of the print server.

7 In the [File Server Name:] box, enter the name of the file server in which a print server is created.

You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available file servers.

8 Enter the NDS tree name in the [NDS Tree:] box.

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Hyphens and underscores can also be used.

9 In the [NDS Context] box, enter the context of the print server.

You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available NDS trees and NDS contexts.

For a context, object names are entered from the lowest object with each object separated by a period. For example, if you want to create a print server in Net under DS, enter “NET.DS”.

10 In the [Print Server Operation Mode] area, click [As Print Server].

11 Click [OK] to close the [NIB Setup Tool] dialog box.

Setting up using NWadmin

1 From Windows, start NWadmin.

For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.

2 Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

3 In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].

4 In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.

5 In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].

6 In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].

7 Check the settings, and then click [Create].

8 Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

9 In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].

10 In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name

11 Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].

12 Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.

13 In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you, and then click [OK].

14 Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].

15 Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK].

16 Check the settings, and then click [OK].

17 Select a context specified using NIB Setup Tool, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

18 In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Sever (Non NDPS)].

19 In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the print server name.

Use the same print server name specified using NIB Setup Tool.

20 Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].

21 Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.

22 In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].

23 Check the settings, and then click [OK].

24 Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

❖ **To exit**

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ **To start**

```
CAREE: load pserver print_server_name
```

Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 3.x.

Setting up using NIB Setup Tool

1 Log on to the file server as a supervisor or supervisor equivalent.

2 Start NIB Setup Tool from [Start] menu.

3 Click [Property Sheet], and then click [OK].

4 Select a printer you want to configure.

5 On the [NetWare] tab, enter the name of the print server in the [Print Server Name] box.

6 In the [File Server Name:] box, enter the name of the file server in which a print server is created.

You can also click **[Browse]** to browse through available file servers.

7 In the [Print Server Operation Mode] area, click [As Remote Printer].

8 In the [Remote Printer No.] box, enter the printer number.

Use the same printer number created in the print server.

9 A confirmation message appears. Click [OK].

10 On the [NIB] menu, click [Exit].

Setting up using PCONSOLE

1 Enter "PCONSOLE" from the command prompt.

```
F:> PCONSOLE
```

2 Create a print queue.

When using the existing print queue, go to the procedure for creating a printer.

3 From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Queue Information], and then press the【Enter】key.

4 Press【Insert】key, and then enter a print queue name.

5 Press【ESC】key to return to the [Available Options] menu.

6 Set up the network connection to a printer.

7 On the [Available Options] menu, click [Print Server Information], and then press the【ENTER】key.

8 To create a new print server, press the【INSERT】key, and then enter a print server name.

For a currently defined print server, select a print server in the **[Print Server]** list.

Use the same printer name specified using NIB Setup Tool.

9 From the [Print Server Information] menu, select [Print Server Configuration].

10 From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Printer Configuration].

11 Select the printer indicated as [Not Installed].

Use the same printer number specified as the remote printer number using NIB Setup Tool.

12 To change the printer name, enter a new name.

A name "Printer x" is assigned to the printer. The "x" stands for the number of the selected printer.

13 As type, select [Remote Parallel, LPT1].

The IRQ, Buffer size, Starting form, and Queue service mode are automatically configured.

14 Press the【ESC】key, and then click [Yes] on the confirmation message.

15 Press the [ESC] key to return to [Print Server Configuration Menu].

16 Assign print queues to the created printer.

17 From [Print Server Configuration Menu], select [Queues Serviced By Printer].

18 Select the printer created.

19 Press the [INSERT] key to select a queue serviced by the printer.

You can select several queues.

20 Follow the instructions on the screen to make other necessary settings.

Following these steps, check that the queues are assigned.

21 Press the [ESC] key until "Exit?" appears, and then select [Yes] to exit PCONSOLE.

22 Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

❖ **To quit**

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ **To start**

```
CAREE: load pserver print_server_name
```

Note

❒ If the printer works as configured, the message "Waiting for job" appears.

Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1 and 6.

Important

❒ To use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x/5/5.1, set it to NDS mode.

❒ Do not use the printer as a remote printer when Pure IP is used.

Setting up using NIB Setup Tool

1 Log on to the file server as an administrator or administrator equivalent.

2 StartNIB Setup Tool from [Start] menu.

3 Click [Property Sheet], and then click [OK].

4 Select a printer you want to configure.

5 Click [NetWare].

6 In the [Logon Mode] area, click [File Server Mode] or [NDS Mode].

If **[File Server Mode]** is selected, the network connection is established based on the string you entered.

If **[NDS Mode]** is selected, the network connection is established based on the string you entered.

7 In the [Print Server Name(P):] box, enter the name of the print server.

Use the same print server name in NWadmin. Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters.

8 In the [File Server Name(F):] box, enter the name of the file server in which a print server is created.

You can also click **[Browse...]** to browse through available file servers. Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters.

9 In the [NDS Tree(T):] box, enter the NDS tree name and create the file server.

You can also click **[Browse...]** to browse through available NDS trees and NDS contexts. Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Hyphens and underscores can also be used.

10 In the [NDS Context(C):] box, enter a context in which the print server is created.

Enter up to 127 alphanumeric characters.

For context, object names from Root are entered from the lowest object, with each object separated by a period. For example, to create a print server in the NETWORK object under the organization object DS of Root, enter “NETWORK.DS”.

11 In the [Print Server Option Mode] area, click [As Remote Printer(R)].

12 In the [Remote Printer No.(N)] box, enter the printer number. Use the same printer number created.

13 Click [OK] to close [NIB Setup Tool].

Setting up using NWadmin

1 From Windows, start NWadmin.

For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.

2 **Set up the network connection to a print queue. Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

3 **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].**

4 **In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.**

5 **In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].**

6 **In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].**

7 **Check the settings, and then click [Create].**

8 **Set up the network connection to a printer. Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

9 **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].**

10 **In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name**

11 **Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].**

12 **Assign print queues to the created printer. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.**

13 **In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].**

14 **Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].**

15 **Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].**

16 **Set up the network connection to a print server. Select a context specified using NIB Setup Tool, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

17 **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Sever (Non NDPS)].**

18 **In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the print server name.**

Use the same print server name specified using NIB Setup Tool.

19 **Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].**

20 **Assign the printer to the created print server. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.**

21 In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].

22 In the [Printers] area, click the printer you assigned, and then click [Printer Number]

23 Enter the printer number, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].

Use the same printer number specified as the remote printer number using NIB Setup Tool.

24 Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

❖ **To exit**

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ **To start**

```
CAREE: load pserver print_server_name
```

Printing Files Directly from Windows

You can print files directly using Windows commands. For example, you can print PostScript files for PostScript 3.

❖ **Windows 95/98/Me**
You can print files directly using “ftp” command.

❖ **Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows NT 4.0**
You can print files directly using “lpr”, “rcp” or “ftp” command.

Setup

Follow the procedure below to make network environment settings.

1 Enable TCP/IP with the control panel, and then set up the printer’s network environment about TCP/IP including IP addresses.

TCP/IP of the printer is set as default.

2 Install a TCP/IP in Windows to set up the network environment.

Consult the network administrator for the local setting information.

3 To print under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0, install “Printing service for UNIX” as the network application. To print under Windows NT 4.0, install “Microsoft TCP/IP printing” as the network application.

Reference

For details about setting up IP address, see Setup Guide.

For details about setting the IP address of the printer using DHCP, see p.280 “Using DHCP”.

This completes the setup for specifying a printer using an IP address when printing. When using a host name to specify a printer, proceed to p.245 “Using a Host Name Instead of an IP Address” and continue the setup.

Using a Host Name Instead of an IP Address

When a host name is defined, you can specify a printer by host name instead of IP address. The host names vary depending on the network environment.

When using DNS

Use the host name set to the data file on the DNS server.

Copyright © 2004, 2005

When setting the IP address of a printer using DHCP

Use the printer name on the configuration page as the host name.

Reference

For details about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”.

In other cases

Add the IP address and host name of the network printer to the hosts file on the computer used for printing. Methods of addition vary depending on operating systems.

Windows 95/98/Me

1 Copy WINDOWSHOSTS.SAM to the same directory and name it “HOSTS” with no extension.

2 Open the “WINDOWSHOSTS” file created using memo pad files, for instance.

3 Add an IP address and host name to the hosts file using the following format:

```
192.168.15.16 host  # NP
```

”192.168.15.16” is the IP address, “host” is the printer's host name, and “#NP” is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between “192.168.15.16” and “host”, between “host” and “#NP” respectively, using one line for this format.

4 Save the file.

Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows NT 4.0

1 Open the hosts file using memo pad files, for instance.

The hosts file is in the following folder:

```
WINNTSYSTEM32DRIVERSETCHOSTS
```

”WINNT” is the directory of the installation destination for Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0.

2 Add an IP address and host name to the hosts file using the following format:

```
192.168.15.16 host  # NP
```

”192.168.15.16” is the IP address, “host” is the printer's host name, and “#NP” is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between “192.168.15.16” and “host”, between “host” and “#NP” respectively, using one line for this format.

3 Save the file.

Printing Commands

The following explains printing operations using the “lpr”, “rcp”, and “ftp” commands.

Enter commands using the command prompt window. The location of the command prompts varies depending on operating systems:

- Windows 95/98
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[MS-DOS Prompt]**
- Windows Me
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[Accessories]** - **[MS-DOS Prompt]**
- Windows 2000
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[Accessories]** - **[Command Prompt]**
- Windows XP, Windows Server 2003
  [Start] - **[All Programs]** - **[Accessories]** - **[Command Prompt]**
- Windows NT 4.0
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[Command Prompt]**

Note

❒ Match the data format of the file to be printed with the emulation mode of the printer.

❒ If the message “print requests full” appears, no print jobs can be accepted. Try again when sessions end. For each command, the amount of possible sessions is indicated as follows:

- lpr: 5(When the spool printing function is available: 10)
- rcp, rsh: 5
- ftp: 3

❒ Enter the file name in a format including the path from the directory executing commands.

Reference

The “option” specified in a command is an intrinsic printer option and its syntax is similar to printing from UNIX. For details, see UNIX Supplement.

lpr

❖ **When specifying a printer by IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's IP address [-Poption] [-ol] \pass
name\file name
```

❖ **When using a host name instead of an IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's host name [-Poption] [-ol] \pass
name\file name
```

When printing a binary file, add the "-ol" option (lowercase O, and lowercase L).

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> lpr -Shost -Pfiletype=RPS -ol C:\PRINT\file1
```

rcp

First, register the printer's host name in the hosts file.

```
c:> rcp [-b] \pass name\file name [pass name\file name...]
printer's host name:[option]
```

Note

❒ In file names, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards.

❒ When printing a binary file, add the "-b" option.

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" or "file 2" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> rcp -b C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2 host:filetype=RPS
```

Reference

For details about registering the printer's host name in the hosts file, see p.245 "Using a Host Name Instead of an IP Address".

ftp

Use the "put" or "mput" command according to the number of files to be printed.

❖ **When one file is printed**

```
ftp> put \pass name\file name [option]
```

❖ **When multiple files are printed**

```
ftp> mput \pass name\file name [\pass name\file name...]
[option]
```

Follow the procedure below to print using the "ftp" command.

1 Formulate the printer's IP address or the host name of the hosts file printer as an argument and use the "ftp" command.

```
% ftp printer's IP address
```

2 Enter the user name and password, and then press the [# Enter] key.

There is no default user name while "password" is the default password.

```
User:
Password:
```

3 When printing a binary file, set the file mode to binary.

```
ftp> bin
```

When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

4 Specify files to be printed.

The following shows the examples of printing a PostScript file named “file 1” in the “C:\PRINT” directory and printing file 1 and file 2.

```
ftp> put C:\PRINT\file1 filetype=RPS
ftp> mput C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2
```

5 Quit ftp.

```
ftp> bye
```

Note

- ❒ “=”, “,”, “_”, and “;”cannot be used for filenames. File names will be read as option strings.
- ❒ For “mput” command, option can not be defined.
- ❒ For “mput” command, “*” and “?” can be used as wild cards in file names.
- ❒ When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

Mac OS

This section explains how to configure a Mac OS to use EtherTalk and USB.

The following explains how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are not using Mac OS 9.1, see the manual of the Mac OS you are using for details

Important

❒ For Mac OS 8.6 and higher. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)

Note

❒ The PostScript 3 printer driver is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

Mac OS 8 and 9:PS Driver:(language):Disk1

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver and PPD File

It is necessary to install a printer driver and PPD files to print from a Mac OS.

Follow the procedure below to install a printer driver and a PPD file into a Mac OS using Mac OS 8.6 and higher.

PostScript 3 Printer Driver

1. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
2. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**
3. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
4. **Double-click the [PS Driver] folder.**
5. **Double-click the folder of the language you use.**
6. **Open [DISK1], and then double-click the installer icon.**
7. **Follow the instructions on the screen.**

PPD Files

1. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**
2. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
3. **Double-click the [Printer Descriptions] folder.**
4. **Double-click the folder of the language you use.**

Copyright © 2004, 2005

5 **Open the [DISK1] folder.**

6 **Drag the PPD file and the plugin file into [Printer Descriptions] in [Extensions] under [System Folder].**

7 **Restart the Mac OS.**

Setting Up PPD Files

Important

❒ Make sure that the printers are connected to an AppleTalk network before performing the following procedure.

1 **On the [Apple] menu, click [Chooser].**

2 **Click the Adobe PS icon.**

3 **In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, click the name of the printer you want to use.**

4 **Click [Create].**

5 **Click the printer you want to use, and then click [Select].**

A PPD file is set up and the Adobe PS icon appears at the left of the printer name in the list. Follow the procedure on p.252 “Setting Up Options” to make option settings; otherwise close the **[Chooser]** dialog box.

Creating a Desktop Printer Icon

Important

❒ Make sure that printers are connected to the USB before performing the following procedure.

To use a printer connected by USB, create a desktop printer icon.

1 **Double-click [Desktop Printer Utility] in the [AdobePS Components] folder.**

2 **Click [AdobePS] in [With:], click [Printer (USB)] in [Create Desktop], and then click [OK].**

3 **Click [Change] in [USB Printer Selection].**

4 **Select the model you are using in [Select a USB Printer:], and then click [OK].**

5 **Click [Auto Setup] in [PostScript™ Printer Description (PPD) File].**

6 **Click [Create].**

7 **Enter the printer name, and then click [Save].**

The printer icon appears on the desktop.

8 Quit Desktop Printer Utility.

Setting Up Options

1 On the [Apple] menu, click [Chooser].

2 Click the Adobe PS icon.

3 In the [Select the PostScript Printer:] list, click the name of the printer you want to use, and then click [Setup].

4 Click [Configure].

A list of options appears.

5 Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it.

6 Click [OK].

The list of options closes.

7 Click [OK].

The **[Chooser]** dialog box appears.

8 Close the [Chooser] dialog box.

Note

❒ If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.

Installing the ColorSync Profiles

ColorSync profiles enable a printer to print colors consistent with those on the computer display. You must install the ColorSync profile to use this function.

Follow the procedure below to install the ColorSync profiles.

1 Start a Mac OS.

2 Double-click the hard disk icon, and then open the appropriate folder for installing the ColorSync profiles.

The location of the appropriate folder may vary depending on the version of the Mac OS. The following are examples:

- System: Preferences: ColorSync profiles
- System: ColorSync profiles

3. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
   The CD-ROM drive icon appears.
4. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**
   The contents of the CD-ROM appear.
5. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
6. **Double-click the [ColorSync™ Profiles] folder.**
7. **Drag the file to the [ColorSync™ Profiles] folder on the hard disk.**
   The ColorSync profiles are installed.

Note

- ❒ The ColorSync profiles are consistent with color characteristics defined by the International Color Consortium (ICC).
- ❒ For some computer displays, particular settings need to be created by ColorSync. For details, see the appropriate manuals for your computer display.

Installing Adobe Type Manager

Important

- ❒ Quit all applications currently running before installation. Install ATM after you restart the computer.

1. **Start a Mac OS.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
3. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive con.**
4. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
5. **Double-click the [ATM] folder.**
6. **Double-click the ATM 4.6.3 installer icon.**
7. **Follow the instructions on the screen.**
8. **When the procedure is complete, restart the computer. ATM will be completely installed only after restarting.**
9. **On the [Apple] menu, open [Control Panel], and then click [~ATM].**
10. **The ATM control panel opens.**

Note

❒ For details about installation, see the operating instructions in the ATM folder.

Installing Screen fonts

Follow the procedure below to install screen fonts.

The screen fonts described below can be found in the **[Fonts]** folder on the CD-ROM.

1. **Start a Mac OS.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
   The CD-ROM drive icon appears.
3. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**
   The contents of the CD-ROM appear.
4. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
5. **Double-click the [Fonts] folder.**
6. **Double-click the [Screen font] folder.**
7. **Double-click the [TrueType] or [Type1] folder.**
   Select the font type you want to use.
8. **Copy the fonts you want to install in [Fonts] under [System Folder].**
   A confirmation message appears.
9. **Click [OK].**
   The fonts are installed.
10. **Restart the Mac OS.**

Using USB Interface

Follow the procedure below to setup USB connection.

1. **Open the [AdobePS Component] folder on the hard disk.**
2. **Double-click [Desktop Printer Utility].**
3. **Click [AdobePS] in [With:], click [Printer (USB)] in [Create Desktop], and then click [OK].**
4. **Click [Change] in [PostScript™ Printer Description (PPD) File].**

5 Select the PPD files of the connected printer, and then click [Select].

6 Click [Change] in [USB Printer Selection].

7 Select the model you are using in [Select a USB Printer:], and then click [OK].

8 Click [Create].

The following message appears.

9 Specify the file location and the name, and then click [Save].

10 Specify the file location and the name, and then click [Save].

The printer icon appears on the desktop.

11 Quit Desktop Printer Utility.

Note

- ❒ The procedures used to configure Mac OS may vary depending on the Mac OS version. The following describes how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are using a different version of Mac OS, use the following procedures as a reference and see the manuals for your Mac OS version.
- ❒ Mac OS supports only the standard USB ports for this printer.
- ❒ When printing with a USB connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to **[Auto Detect]** or **[PS]** before printing.

Changing to EtherTalk

Follow the procedure below to configure to a Mac OS to use EtherTalk.

1 Open [Control Panel], and then double-click the AppleTalk icon.

2 On the [Connect via:] pop-up menu, click [Ethernet].

3 If you change zones, select a name on the [Current zone:] pop-up menu.

4 Close the AppleTalk control panel.

5 Restart the computer.

Note

- ❒ The procedures used to configure Mac OS may vary depending on the Mac OS version. The following describes how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are using a different version of Mac OS, use the following procedures as a reference and see the manuals for your Mac OS version.
- ❒ Confirm the Connection to the Printer with TCP/IP

Reference

For information about installing applications required for EtherTalk, see the Mac OS manuals.

Mac OS X

This section explains how to configure a Mac OS X to use EtherTalk and USB.

Follow the procedure below to configure Mac OS X 10.1. If you are not using Mac OS X 10.1, see the manual of the Mac OS X you are using for details.

Important

❒ For Mac OS X 10.1 or higher.

Note

❒ The PPD files are stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

Mac OS X:PPD Installer

Installing the PPD Files

Follow the procedure below to install a PPD file to print from Mac OS X.

Important

❒ You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your network administrator.

1. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
2. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**
3. **Double-click the [Mac OS X] folder.**
4. **Double-click the installer icon.**
5. **Follow the instructions on the screen.**

Setting Up the PPD File

1. **Start Print Center.**
2. **Click [Add Printer].**

   Click **[AppleTalk]** on the first pop-up menu.

   If the zone is set, select the zone from the second pop-up menu.
3. **Select the PPD file for the model you are using from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu, and then click [Add].**

Setting Up Options

Important

❒ No printer option settings can be made under Mac OS X. No new settings for options not installed can be made.

Using USB Interface

Follow the procedure below to setup USB connection.

1. **Start Print Center.**
2. **Click [Add].**
3. **Click [USB] on the pop-up menu.**
   The connected printer appears.
4. **Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu.**
   A list of printer types appears.
5. **Select the name of the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].**
6. **Close the [Printer List] dialog box, and then quit Print Center.**

Note

❒ When printing with a USB connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to **[Auto Detect]** or **[PS]** before printing.

❒ USB2.0 can be used only with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.

Using Rendezvous

Follow the procedure below to print using Rendezvous under Mac OS X 10.2.3 or higher. Ethernet and wireless LAN connections can also be used.

1. **Start Print Center.**
2. **Click [Add].**
3. **Click [Rendezvous] on the pop-up menu.**
   The connected printer appears.
4. **Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu.**

A list of printer types appears.

5. **Select the name of the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].**

6. **Close the [Printer List] dialog box, and then quit Print Center.**

Note

❒ When printing with a Rendezvous connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to **[Auto Detect]** or **[PS]** before printing.

Changing to EtherTalk

Important

❒ You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your network administrator

Follow the procedure below to configure a Mac OS X to use EtherTalk.

Reference

For information about installing applications required for EtherTalk, see the Mac OS manuals.

1. **Open [System Preference], and then click the Network icon.**

2. **Click the [AppleTalk] tab.**

3. **Select the [Make AppleTalk Active] check box.**

4. **To change AppleTalk zones, select a name from the [AppleTalk Zone:] pop-up menu.**

5. **When the settings are made, click [Apple Now].**

Configuring the Printer

Use the control panel to enable AppleTalk. (The default is active.)

Using PostScript 3

Job Type

You can select the type of print job.

Important

❒ If you use Mac OS X, this function is not available.

❖ **Normal**
Select this for normal printing. The print job starts immediately after the print command is given.

❖ **Sample Print**
Use this function to print the first set of a multiple-set print job. After checking the results, the remaining sets can be printed using the control panel. This function can protect you from printing a large quantity of misprints.

❖ **Locked Print**
Use this function to print confidential documents. Documents will not be printed automatically unless a password is entered using the control panel.

Using Sample Print

Important

❒ To use this function, the optional hard disk must be installed on the printer.

❒ The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At most, the printer can save 30 jobs or 1000 pages for Sample Print and Locked Print.

❒ If you turn off the power, the job saved on the hard disk will be deleted.

❒ Sample Print files will not appear on the panel display if they have already been executed or deleted using the Web browser before you select “Sample Print“ from the control panel.

❒ Sample Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you select **[Sample Print]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Sample Print files.

❒ If you use Mac OS X, Sample Print function cannot be used.

❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, sample print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.

1 **In an application, select the menu command to print.**

The print dialog box appears.

2 On the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].

3 In [Job Type:], click [Sample Print], and then select the appropriate setting.

4 In [User ID:], enter the user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

Set this to identify the user associated with the job.

The user ID can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

5 After making the necessary settings you want, click [Print].

The Sample Print job is sent to the printer and one set is printed.

6 Check the sample print to confirm that the settings are correct.

If the settings are correct, print the remaining sets.

If not, you can delete the saved job.

Reference

For details about printing the remaining sets, see p.107 “Printing the Remaining Sets”.

For details about deleting a Sample Print file, see p.108 “Deleting a Sample Print File”.

Using Locked Print

Important

- To use this function, the optional hard disk must be installed on the printer.
- The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At most, the printer can save 30 jobs or 1000 pages for Sample Print and Locked Print.
- If you turn off the power, the job saved on the hard disk will be deleted.
- Locked Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select **[Locked Print]** using the control panel.
- Locked Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected **[Locked Print]** using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Locked Print files.
- If you use Mac OS X, Locked Print function cannot be used.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, locked print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.

❒ Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.

- When there are 30 Sample Print and Locked Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
- When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 1000 pages.

1 In an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

2 On the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].

3 In [Job Type:], click [Locked Print], and then select the appropriate setting.

4 In [User ID:], enter the user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters, and then enter a 4-digit password in [Password:].

Set this to identify the user associated with the job.

5 After making the necessary settings you want, click [Print].

The Locked Print job is sent to the printer.

6 Enter the password using the control panel, and then specify whether to print or delete the job.

Reference

For details about entering the password, see p.111 “Entering a Password”.

For details about deleting the job, see p.112 “Deleting a Locked Print File”.

Duplex Printing

Use this function to select duplex printing.

Important

❒ To use this function, the optional duplex unit must be installed on the printer.

❒ You cannot perform duplex printing when using the bypass tray.

❖ **None**
Disables duplex printing.

❖ **Flip on Long Edge**
Prints so you can open it to the long edge when bound along the long edge.

❖ **Flip on Short Edge**
Prints so you can open it to the short edge when bound along the short edge.

Note

❒ Availability of these items varies depending on the operating system you are using. Click the button that means **[Flip on Long Edge]** or **[Flip on Short Edge]**.

Color Mode

Use this function to select whether the document is printed in color or black and white.

❖ **Color**
Prints color documents in full color.

Note

❒ Color images are printed using CMYK toner, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black. CMYK represents the three primary subtractive colors.

❒ If you want to adjust the print color, use the settings in the Advanced dialog box accessed from the Advanced button on the **[Print Quality]** tab.

❖ **Black and White**
Prints everything, including color documents, in black and white. Black and White printing is faster than Color. To stop black and white areas being printed with CMYK toner, select **[Black and White]** in the printer driver as well as in the application.

Gradation

Use this function to select a type of gradation suited to your requirements.

❖ **Fast**
Prints quickly but loses smoothness.

❖ **Standard**
Prints with good gradation.

Color Profile

Use this function to select the color profile pattern.

❖ **Auto**
Use this setting to automatically configure the best color profile pattern based on the appearance of the document to be printed.

❖ **Photographic**
Use this setting to enhance reproduction of photos and graphics that include midtones.

❖ **Presentation**
Use this setting to enhance reproduction of documents containing text and graphics. This CRD is best for printing colored charts, graphs, presentation materials and so on. If you use this CRD for printing photographs, color and gradation might not reproduce so well.

❖ **Solid Color**
Use this setting to print specific single colors, logos and so on.

❖ **User Setting**
Use this setting to print images using a CRD downloaded from your application.

❖ **CLP Simulation**
Prints the output colors similar to the colors displayed on the computer screen.

Note

❒ Use this function to select a color rendering dictionary (CRD). The CRD is referred to color matching, so you should select the appropriate CRD for the document you are printing. The selected CRD is also referred to when **[Fine]** or **[Super Fine]** is selected for " Color Setting ". The following items are available: **[Auto]**, **[Photographic]**, **[Presentation]**, and **[Solid Color]**.

Color Setting

Use this function to select the correction method used for color conversion.

Important

❒ The color rendering dictionary selected in the Color Profile setting is used.

❖ **Off**
No modification to the color setting.

❖ **Fine**
Select this setting to perform color matching based on the printer's built-in color rendering dictionaries, and to perform CMYK conversion. This setting performs printing at an output target of Monitor $\gamma = 1.8$.

❖ **Super Fine**
Select this setting to use a color rendering dictionary similar to the Fine setting but is capable of producing output that is more vivid. Use this setting to emphasize lighter colors. This setting performs printing at an output target of Monitor $\gamma = 2.2$.

Note

❒ Use this function to select a color rendering dictionary (CRD). The CRD is referred to color matching, so you should select the appropriate CRD for the document you are printing. The selected CRD is also referred to when **[Fine]** or **[Super Fine]** is selected for "Color Setting". The following items are available: **[Auto]**, **[Photographic]**, **[Presentation]**, and **[Solid Color]**.

CMYK Simulation Profile

You can simulate the color tone of the printing ink.

You can select the printing ink standard from US OffsetPrint, Euroscale, Japan-Color and PaletteColor.

Dithering

Use this function to set the Image Rendering mode.

❖ **Photographic**
Performs dithering in an appropriate form for photographs.

❖ **Text**
Performs dithering in an appropriate form for text.

Gray Reproduction

Use this function to select Black Color mode for text and line art.

❖ **Black by K**
Select this setting to use a black toner.

❖ **Black/Gray by K**
Black portions are printed in gray.

❖ **CMY+K**
Select this setting to use all toners.

Color Matching

Use this function to select whether or not you want the colors in the documents to be adjusted before printing, so that the printed page matches the colors on the screen closer.

❖ **Image Color Control**
Open the **[Image Color Matching]** dialog box, and then click this button to specify exactly how you want the colors on your screen adjusted before printing.

Printer Utility for Mac

By using Printer Utility for Mac, you can download fonts, change the name of the printer and so on.

Important

❒ If a Macintosh and printer are connected by USB, you cannot use Printer Utility for Mac.

Note

❒ Printer Utility for Mac is included on the CD-ROM labeled “Printer Drivers and Utilities”.

❒ Printer Utility for Mac requires Mac OS 7.6.1-9.x, or Mac OS X 10.1.x or 10.2.1. Mac OS X 10.0.x and 10.2 are not supported.

Installing Printer Utility for Mac

Follow these steps to install Printer Utility for Mac on the machine.

1 Start the Macintosh.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The CD-ROM icon appears.

3 Double-click the hard disk icon to open it.

4 Double-click the CD-ROM icon.

The contents of the CD-ROM appear.

5 Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.

Note

❒ Under Mac OS X, double-click the **[Mac OS X]** folder.

6 Double-click the [PS Utility] folder on the CD-ROM.

7 Double-click the [Printer Utility for Mac] folder.

8 Double-click the folder of the language you use.

9 Move the “Printer Utility for Mac” file to the Macintosh hard disk using a drag-and-drop operation.

10 Drag the CD-ROM icon to the Trash to eject the CD-ROM.

Printer Utility for Mac is installed.

Starting Printer Utility for Mac

Mac OS

Important

❒ Before starting Printer Utility for Mac, make sure the printer is selected in **[Chooser]** on the Apple menu.

1. **Double-click the Printer Utility for Mac icon.**
   The **[Printer Utility for Mac]** dialog box appears.
2. **Click [OK].**
   Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.

Mac OS X

1. **Double-click the Printer Utility for Mac icon.**
   The **[Printer Utility for Mac]** dialog box appears.
2. **Click [OK].**
3. **In the [Available Printers:] box, select the printer you want to use.**

   Note

   ❒ If you change zones, select a name from **[Available Network Zones:]**.
   ❒ Click **[Choose Printer...]** on the Printer Utility for Mac menu if you want to change the printer.
4. **Select the printer you want to use.**
   Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.
5. **Click [Choose].**

Printer Utility for Mac Functions

Downloading PS Fonts

You can download the PS fonts to the printer memory or hard disk drive.

Important

❒ The following procedure to download the fonts assume that you are a system administrator. If you are not, be sure to consult your system administrator.
❒ During the download, do not turn off the power switch, operate the panel or open or close the cover.
❒ If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to the defaults.

❒ Confirm that a Macintosh and the printer are connected with Appletalk.

1. **Select [Download PS Fonts...] on the [File] menu.**
2. **Click [Add to list].**
   The dialog box to select fonts appears.
3. **Select the desired font files, and then click [Open].**
   The list of selectable font names appears.
4. **After adding all the fonts you want to download, click [OK].**
   The dialog box of selected fonts to download appears.
5. **Click [Download].**
   The fonts begin to download, and the download status is shown.
6. **When the completion message appears, click [OK].**
7. **Click [Cancel].**

Note

❒ Some fonts cannot be downloaded.

❒ Before downloading, read the documentation about the fonts you want to use.

Displaying Printer Fonts

You can display the available fonts currently downloaded to the printer. Fonts in the printer memory and hard disk drive can be displayed.

1. **Select [Display Printer's Fonts...] on the [File] menu.**
   A dialog box appears.
2. **Select [Printer's memory] or [Printer's disk].**
3. **Click [OK].**

Note

❒ The fonts displayed in italics are the default fonts.

Deleting Fonts

You can delete fonts from the printer memory or hard disk drive.

Important

❒ You cannot delete the fonts displayed in italic.

1. **Select [Display Printer's fonts] on the [File] menu.**
   A dialog box appears.

2 **Select [Printer's memory] or [Printer's disk].**

3 **Select the fonts you want to delete.**

4 **Click [Delete].**

A confirmation message appears.

5 **Confirm the fonts you want to delete and the printer name from which you want to delete the fonts.**

6 **Click [Continue], and then click [OK].**

7 **Click [OK].**

Initializing the Printer Disk

When initializing the printer hard disk, all the fonts downloaded to the printer hard disk drive are deleted. Before initializing, be sure to check the fonts on the hard disk drive.

Important

- When initializing the printer hard disk drive from the control panel, all of the data on the printer hard disk drive is deleted. Before initializing, be sure to check the data on the hard disk drive.
- Do not turn off the power switch until initializing is completed, otherwise the hard disk drive might be damaged.

1 **Select [Initialize Printer's Disk...] on the [File] menu.**

The confirmation message appears. To cancel initialization, click **[Cancel]**.

2 **Click [Execute].**

Initializing starts.

3 **When the completion message appears, click [OK].**

Page Setup

You can set the paper size on which to print “Print Fonts Catalogue” and “Prints Fonts Sample”.

1 **Select [Page Setup...] on the [File] menu.**

2 **Select the paper size.**

Printing Font Catalog

You can print the names of fonts available on the printer.

1 **Select [Print Fonts Catalogue] on the [File] menu.**

2 **Click [Print].**

Note

❒ The paper selected under **[Page Setup]** is used.

Printing Font Sample

You can print samples of fonts downloaded to the hard disk drive or memory.

1 **Select [Print Fonts Sample...] on the [File] menu.**

2 **Click [Print].**

Note

❒ Print by using the paper selected on **[Page Setup]**.

Renaming the Printer

You can change the printer name displayed under Appletalk. If you connect several printers on the network, assign different names so you can identify them. If several printers have the same name, a digit appears next to the printer name in **[Chooser]**.

Important

❒ You can enter up to 31 digits and letters.

❒ Do not use symbols, for example “*”, “:”, “=”, “@”, “~”.

Mac OS

1 **On the [File] menu, click [Rename Printer...].**

2 **In the [New Name:] filed enter a new name.**

3 **Click [Rename].**

The printer name is changed.

4 **Click [OK].**

5 **On the Apple menu, click [Chooser].**

6 **Click the [AdobePS] icon.**

7 **Select the printer whose name you changed, and then close the [Chooser] dialog box.**

Note

❒ If there are several Appletalk zones, select the zone the machine belongs to.

Mac OS X

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Rename Printer...].**
2. **In the [New Name:] filed enter a new name.**
3. **Click [Rename].**
   The printer name is changed.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **On the [Printer Utility for Mac] menu, click [Choose Printer...].**
6. **In the [Available Network Zones:] list, select the zone for the Macintosh in use.**
7. **In the [Available Printers:] list, select the printer whose name you changed, and then click [Choose].**

Restarting the Printer

You can restart the printer.

1. **Select [Restart Printer] on the [File] menu.**
2. **Confirm the message that appears on the screen, and then click [Restart].**
   The printer restarts.

Note

❒ The fonts downloaded in the printer memory will be deleted.

❒ If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to the defaults.

Downloading PostScript Files

You can download a Postscript file to the printer.

1. **Select [Download PostScript File...] on the [Utility] menu.**
2. **Select the file name to download, click the file name, and then click [Open].**
3. **Type the log file name, and then click [Save].**
   The selected file is downloaded.

Note

❒ Errors are recorded in the log file.

Selecting the Zone

You can change the zone to which the printer belongs under Appletalk.

Important

❒ Confirm that a Macintosh and printer are connected with Appletalk.

Mac OS

1. **On the [Utility] menu, click [Select Zone...].**
   The zone to which the printer belongs and the available zone list appear.
2. **Select the zone in which you want to locate the printer, and then click [Change].**
   A confirmation message appears.
3. **Click [Continue].**
   A confirmation message appears.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **On the Apple menu, click [Chooser].**
6. **Click the [AdobePS] icon.**
7. **In the [Appletalk zone:] list, select the zone you changed.**
8. **In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, select the printer you want to use.**
9. **Close the [Chooser] dialog box.**

Mac OS X

1. **On the [Utility] menu, click [Select Zone...].**
   The zone to which the printer belongs and the available zone list appear.
2. **Select the zone which you want to locate the printer in, and then click [Change].**
   A confirmation message appears.
3. **Click [Continue].**
   A confirmation message appears.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **On the [Printer Utility for Mac] menu, click [Choose Printer...].**
6. **In the [Available Network Zones:] list, select the zone you changed.**
7. **In the [Available Printers:] list, select the model of printer in use, and then click [Choose].**

Displaying the Printer Status

You can display and confirm the current status of the printer.

1 Select [Display Printer Status...] on the [Utility] menu.

The current status of the printer appears.

2 Confirm the current status of the printer.

You can confirm the memory capacity, the VM (Virtual Memory) space, the hard disk drive status and available space on the hard disk drive. You can also confirm the zone to which the printer belongs.

3 Click [OK].

Launching the Dialogue Console

You can create and edit a PostScript file for printing, and then download it to the printer.

Important

- ❒ "Launch Dialogue Console" is recommended for users with an understanding of PostScript.
- ❒ Do not download any file other than PostScript files to the printer.
- ❒ "Launch Dialogue Console" must be used at your own responsibility.

1 Select [Launch Dialogue Console...] on the [Utility] menu.

Open the editing screen. The Dialogue Console menu bar appears.

2 Type the PostScript command in the editor screen.

To edit a PostScript file, select **[Open]** on the **[File]** menu to open it.

You can search or replace a character string by using the **[Search]** menu.

3 After editing the PostScript file, select [Download Top Window] on [Console] menu to start printing.

The PostScript file is sent to the printer.

The **[Reply from Printer]** box opens, depending on the PostScript file you sent.

4 Select [Return To Main Menu] on the [Console] menu to close the PostScript file.

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM

Two CD-ROMs come with this printer: “Operating Instructions”, and “Printer Drivers and Utilities”.

❖ **Font Manager 2000**
For installing new screen fonts, or organizing and managing fonts already in the system. For details about Font Manager 2000, see the manual on the CD-ROM labeled “Printer Drivers and Utilities”.

❖ **SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin**
For the system administrator to manage network printers.

Reference

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help

❖ **SmartDeviceMonitor for Client**
For users to manage their network print status.

Reference

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help

❖ **1394 Utility**
For the optional IEEE 1394 interface unit. For details, see the Readme file or the manual provided with the optional IEEE 1394 interface unit.

❖ **USB Printing Support**
For connection to Windows 98 SE/Me computers via USB.

Viewing the contents of the CD-ROM

Follow the procedure below to view the contents of the CD-ROM.

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

2 Click [Browse This CD-ROM].

Explorer starts and displays the contents of the CD-ROM.

Printer Drivers for This Printer

Printing requires installing a printer driver appropriate to your operating system. The following drivers are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

Copyright © 2004, 2005

❖ **PCL 6/5e printer driver**

This printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer via a printer language.
The following operating system is supported.

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0

Note

❒ For Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6 or higher is required.

❖ **RPCS printer driver**

This printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. In addition to the conventional user interface, another preset user interface is provided.
The following operating system is supported.

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0

Note

❒ For Windows NT 4.0, Service Pack 6 or higher is required.

❖ **PostScript Printer Drivers and PPD files**

PostScript printer drivers and the PPD files are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer. PostScript printer drivers allow the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.
The following operating system is supported.

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows NT 4.0, Mac OS, and Mac OS X

Note

❒ The PostScript printer drivers and PPD files are included on the CD-ROM labeled “Printer Drivers and Utilities”.

❒ For Mac OS, version 8.6 or higher is required. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)

❖ **PPD files**

PPD files are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is an application that uses TCP/IP and IPX/SPX to monitor network printers. It can monitor multiple network printers using IP address. We recommend that network administrators use this application.

❖ **File path**

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

NETWORK\NETMON\admin\DISK1

Operating system	Protocol stack
Windows 95/98/Me	TCP/IP provided with Windows 95/98/Me IPX/SPX provided with Windows 95/98/Me NetWare Client provided with Windows 95/98 Novell Client provided with Windows 95/98
Windows 2000	TCP/IP provided with Windows 2000 IPX/SPX provided with Windows 2000 NetWare Client provided with Windows 2000 Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Window NT
Windows XP	TCP/IP provided with Windows XP IPX/SPX provided with Windows XP NetWare Client provided with Windows XP Novell Client provided with Windows XP
Windows Server 2003	TCP/IP provided with Windows Server 2003 IPX/SPX provided with Windows Server 2003 NetWare Client provided with Windows Server 2003 Novell Client provided with Windows Server 2003
Windows NT 4.0	TCP/IP provided with Windows NT IPX/SPX provided with Windows NT Client Service for NetWare provided with Windows NT Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Windows NT

❖ **Available functions**

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin has the following functions to check:

- printer supplies such as paper or toner;
- results of print jobs executed from the computer.

Reference

For details about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client has the following functions. We recommend that users install this application.

- Printing in a peer-to-peer network, using TCP/IP, NetBEUI, and IPP from Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0.
- Constantly monitoring the status of devices on the network using TCP/IP and IPX/SPX.

❖ **File path**

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

NETWORK\NETMON\CLIENT\DISK1

Operating system	Protocol stack
Windows 95/98/Me	TCP/IP provided with Windows 95/98/Me IPX/SPX provided with Windows 95/98/Me NetBEUI provided with Windows 95/98/Me NetWare Client provided with Windows 95/98/Me Novell Client provided with Windows 95/98/Me
Windows 2000	TCP/IP provided with Windows 2000 IPX/SPX provided with Windows 2000 NetBEUI provided with Windows 2000 NetWare Client provided with Windows 2000 Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or NT
Windows XP	TCP/IP provided with Windows XP IPX/SPX provided with Windows XP NetWare Client provided with Windows XP Novell Client provided with Windows XP
Windows Server 2003	TCP/IP provided with Windows Server 2003 IPX/SPX provided with Windows Server 2003 NetWare Client provided with Windows Server 2003 Novell Client provided with Windows Server 2003
Windows NT 4.0	TCP/IP provided with Windows NT IPX/SPX provided with Windows NT NetBEUI provided with Windows NT Client Service for NetWare provided with Windows NT Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Windows NT

❖ **Available functions**

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client has the following functions.

- Peer-to-peer print function
  - Prints directly on the network printer without sending any data to a print server.

  - Prints on a substitute printer when there are too many jobs waiting on the specified printer, or when an error disables printing (Recovery Printing).
  - Allocates multiple print jobs to multiple printers (Parallel Printing).
  - Executes prior group registration of printers specified for Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.
- Notification function
  - Displays an error message when there is an error on the specified printer while transferring or printing data.
  - Notifies a print completion. You can also be notified of the print condition, such as displaying the notice only when Recovery Printing is executed.
- Monitoring function
  - Checks printer supplies such as paper or toner.
  - Simultaneously monitors multiple printers in use.
  - Checks the printer's network settings and detailed information of printers.
  - Enables you to check the print job log using the user ID

Important

❒ For Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing, the options on the printers must be the same. If a necessary option is not installed, a printer cannot be used for Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.

❒ For Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing, the paper loaded in the printers must be the same. When a tray is selected for printing, load the same paper in that tray in all printers.

❒ For Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing, the print results may be different if the printers are not the same model or have exactly the same options.

❒ If you select Sample Print or Locked Print, you cannot select Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.

Reference

For details about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help

Cautions to Take When Using in a network

Connecting a Dial-up Router to a Network

When the NetWare file server and printer are on opposite sides of a router, packets are sent back and forth, causing communication charges to be incurred. Because packet transmission is a specification of NetWare, you need to change the configuration of the router. If the network you are using does not allow you to configure the router, configure the printer instead.

Configuring the router

Filter packets so that they do not pass over the dial-up router.

Note

❒ The MAC address of the printer doing the filtering is printed on the printer configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”.

❒ For details about configuring the printer if the router cannot be configured, see the instructions below.

Configuring the printer with NetWare

1 Configure the file server.

2 Set the frame type for a NetWare environment.

Reference

For details about selecting a frame type, see p.149 “Frame Type (NW)”.

Configuring the printer without NetWare

1 When not printing, the network interface board sends packets over the network. Set NetWare to “inactive”.

Reference

For details about selecting protocols, see p.149 “Active Protocol”.

Using DHCP

This printer can be used in a DHCP environment. In a WINS server environment, the printer name can simultaneously be registered with a WINS server.

Note the following points when an Ethernet interface and an IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394) interface are simultaneously installed.

❖ **When static IP addresses are set for each interface**

- IP address: When set at the same value, the Ethernet interface is preferred.
- Subnet mask: When a value overlaps, the Ethernet interface is preferred.
- Gateway address: The value set is used. For the gateway address, set the gateway address located in the subnetwork set by the interface. If the value is outside the subnet range set by the interface, it operates as “0.0.0.0”.

❖ **When each setting is acquired from the DHCP server**

- IP address, subnet mask: Set for each value leased by the DHCP server operating on a connected interface. When overlapping IP addresses or identical IP addresses in the subnetwork are set, only the highest priority active value is set for the interface.

  Note

  ❒ The default priority interface is Ethernet.
- AutoNet: An automatic private address (169.254. xxx.xxx) is set for high priority interfaces.

  Note

  ❒ The default priority interface is IEEE 1394 (IP over 1394).
- Gateway address, DNS server address, domain name: Settings are made for DHCP-acquired values that have the highest interface priority.
  If the gateway address is outside the subnetwork range set by the interface, it operates as “0.0.0.0”.

  Note

  ❒ The default priority interface is Ethernet.

❖ **When the settings of the static IP addresses and the DHCP acquired value overlap**

- IP address, subnet mask: When the static IP address and DHCP-acquired value (IP address) are the same, or the static subnet mask value and DHCP-acquired subnet mask value overlap, the interface set by the static IP address is available using its value set. The interface set by DHCP is reset to the default.
- Gateway address: Use the manually set value.
- If a gateway address is set outside the interface subnetwork range, it operates as “0.0.0.0”.

  Note

  ❒ When the static IP address is not set, or is set as “0.0.0.0”, the interface setting the DHCP-acquired value is activated.

Note

❒ Supported DHCP server operating systems are: Windows 2000 Server, Windows NT 4.0 Server Service Pack 4 or higher, NetWare, and UNIX standard.

- ❒ The IP address acquired from DHCP can be checked on the configuration page. For information about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”.
- ❒ When using WINS server, set the WINS server as shown on p.282 “Configuring the WINS Server”.
- ❒ Under the WINS server, host names can be used for remote network printer ports.
- ❒ If you are not using the WINS server, reserve the printer's IP address in the DHCP server so the same IP address is assigned every time.
- ❒ When there are multiple DHCP servers, make the same reservation for all. This printer uses information from the DHCP server that responds first.
- ❒ The DHCP relay-agent is not supported. If you are using the DHCP relay-agent on an ISDN line network, expensive line charges will be incurred. This is because your computer connects to the ISDN line whenever a packet is transferred from the printer.

Using AutoNet

If the printer IP address is not assigned by a DHCP server automatically, a temporary IP address starting with 169.254, which is not used on the network, can be automatically selected by the printer.

You must change this setting to “on” to use AutoNet.

Reference

See p.183 “autonet”.

Note

- ❒ The DHCP-assigned IP address has priority over that selected by AutoNet. The printer reboots at this time, and is temporarily unable to print.
- ❒ You can check the current IP address on the configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.129 “Printing a Configuration Page”.
- ❒ When AutoNet is running, the printer name is not registered on the WINS server.
- ❒ No communication can take place except between units started up using AutoNet. However, communication can take place with Macintosh computers running Mac OS X 10.2.3 or higher versions.

Configuring the WINS Server

The printer can be configured to register its NetBIOS name with a WINS server when the power is turned on. This enables the NetBIOS name of the printer to be specified from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin even in a DHCP environment.

This section explains configuring the WINS server.

Note

❒ The WINS server is supported with Windows NT 4.0 Server Service Pack 4 or higher, and Windows 2000 Servers WINS Manager.

❒ For details about the WINS server settings, see Windows Help.

❒ If there is no reply from the WINS server, the NetBIOS name is registered by broadcast.

❒ The NetBIOS name can be entered using up to 13 alphanumeric characters.

Using Web Image Monitor

1 Start a Web browser.

2 Enter "http: //(printer's address)/" in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3 Click [Login].

The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

4 Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

To use the default account, enter "admin" as user name, and leave the password blank.

5 In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [Network].

6 Click [TCP/IP].

7 Check that [Enable] is selected for [WINS] in the [Ethernet+IEEE 802.11b] column, and then enter the WINS server IP address in [Primary WINS Server] and [Secondary WINS Server].

Note

❒ When installing the optional expansion 1394 board and using IP over 1394 simultaneously, perform the same operations in the **[IP over 1394]** column.

8 Click [Apply].

9 Quit Web Image Monitor.

Using telnet

See p.181 "Using telnet".

Using the Dynamic DNS Function

Dynamic DNS is a function which dynamically updates (registers and deletes) records (A record and PTR record) managed by the DNS server. When a DNS server is part of the network environment to which this printer, a DNS client, is connected, records can be dynamically updated using this function.

Updating

Updating procedure varies depending on whether the printer IP address is static or acquired by DHCP.

Note

❒ When the dynamic DNS function is not used, records managed by the DNS server must be updated manually, if the printer's IP address is changed.

❒ To update the record using the printer, the DNS server has to have one of the following:

- No security settings made.
- If security settings are made, an IP-specified client (this printer) permits updating.

❖ **For a static IP setting**

If the IP address or host name is changed, the A and PTR records are updated.

If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

- Ethernet and IEEE 802.11b
  RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)
- IEEE 1394
  RNPXXXXXXXXXX (XXXXXXXXXX represents the lower 3-7 bytes of the MAC Address in hexadecimal)

❖ **For DHCP settings**

As a substitute for the printer, the DHCP server updates the record, and one of the following occurs:

- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the DHCP server updates the A and PTR records.
- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the printer updates the A record, and the DHCP server updates the PTR record.

If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

- Ethernet and IEEE 802.11b
  RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)

- IEEE 1394
  RNPXXXXXXXXXX (XXXXXXXXXX represents the lower 3-7 bytes of the MAC Address in hexadecimal)

Important

❒ Dynamic update using message authentication (TSIG, SIG(0)) is not supported.

DNS servers targeted for operation

❖ **For static IP setting**

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

❖ **For DHCP setup, when the printer updates the A record**

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

❖ **For DHCP setup, when the DHCP server updates records**

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher
- DNS servers with standard NetWare 5 (or a higher version) features

DHCP servers targeted for operation

As a substitute for the printer, DHCP servers capable of updating the A record and PTR record are as follows:

- Microsoft DHCP servers with standard Windows 2000 Server (Service Pack 3 or higher versions)/Windows Server 2003 features
- ISC DHCP 3.0 or higher
- DHCP server with standard NetWare 5 features

Setting the dynamic DNS function

Make settings with telnet using the “dns” command. For details, see p.186 “dns”.

Configuring SSL Encryption

This section describes how to configure SSL (secure sockets layer) encryption. Using SSL encryption, you can issue a server certificate to authorize use of the printer.

This can be specified only when the optional network date protection unit is installed.

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption

This can be specified by the network administrator.

To protect the communication path and establish encrypted communication, create and install the server certificate.

There are two ways of installing a server certificate: create and install a self-certificate using the machine, or request a certificate from a certificate authority and install it.

❖ **Configuration flow (self-signed certificate)**

① Creating and installing the server certificate
Install the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.

② Enabling SSL
Enable the **[SSL/TLS]** setting using Web Image Monitor.

❖ **Configuration flow (certificate issued by a certificate authority)**

① Creating the server certificate
Create the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.
The application procedure after creating the certificate depends on the certificate authority. Follow the procedure specified by the certificate authority.

② Installing the server certificate
Install the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.

③ Enabling SSL
Enable the **[SSL/TLS]** setting using Web Image Monitor.
Creating and Installing the Server Certificate (Self-Signed Certificate)
Create and install the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.

Creating and Installing the Self-Signed Certificate

Create and install the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.

This section explains the use of a self-certificate as the server certificate.

1 Open a Web browser.

2 Enter “http://(printer's-address)/” in the address bar to access the printer.

3 Log on to the printer.

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4 Click [Configuration], then click [Security], and then click [Certificates].

5 Click [Create].

6 Make the necessary settings.

Reference

For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

7 Click [OK].

The setting is changed.

8 Click [OK].

A security warning dialog box appears.

9 Check the details, and then click [OK].

[Installed] appears under **[Certificate Status]** to show that a server certificate for the printer has been installed.

10 Log off from the printer.

Note

❒ Click **[Delete]** to delete the server certificate from the printer.

Creating the Server Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

Create the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.

This section explains the use of a certificate issued by a certificate authority as the server certificate.

1 Open a Web browser.

2 Enter "http://(printer's-address)/" in the address bar to access the printer.

3 Log on to the printer.

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4 Click [Configuration], then click [Security], and then click [Certificates].

The **[Certificates]** page appears.

5 Click [Request].

6 Make the necessary settings.

Reference

For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

7 Click [OK].

[Requesting] appears for **[Certificate Status]** in the **[Certificates]** area.

Quoting the character string displayed in **[Certificate Request Contents:]**, apply to the certificate authority for a certificate.

8 Log off from the printer.

9 Apply to the certificate authority for the server certificate.

The application procedure depends on the certificate authority. For details, contact the certificate authority.

When applying, use the data created with Web Image Monitor.

Note

❒ By using Web Image Monitor, you can create the contents of the server certificate but you cannot send the application.

❒ Click **[Cancel Request]** to cancel the request for the server certificate.

Installing the Server Certificate (Certificate Issued by a Certificate Authority)

Install the server certificate using Web Image Monitor.

This section explains the use of a certificate issued by a certificate authority as the server certificate.

Enter the server certificate contents issued by the certificate authority.

1 Open a Web browser.

2 Enter "http://(printer's-address)/" in the address bar to access the printer.

3 Log on to the printer.

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4 Click [Configuration], then click [Security], and then click [Certificates].

The **[Certificates]** page appears.

5 Click [Install].

6 Enter the contents of the server certificate.

In the **[Certificate Request]** box, enter the contents of the server certificate received from the certificate authority.

Reference

For details about the displayed items and selectable items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

7 Click [OK].

[Installed] appears under **[Certificate Status]** to show that a server certificate for the printer has been installed.

8 Log off from the printer.

Enabling SSL

After installing the server certificate in the printer, enable the SSL setting.

This procedure is used for a self-signed certificate or a certificate issued by a certificate authority.

1 Open a Web browser.

2 Enter "http://(printer's-address)/" in the address bar to access the printer.

3 Log on to the printer.

The network administrator can log on.

Enter the login user name and login password.

4 Click [Configuration], then click [Security], and then click [SSL/TLS].

The **[SSL/TLS]** page appears.

5 Click [Enable] for [SSL/TLS].

6 Click [Apply].

The SSL setting is enabled.

7 Log off from the printer.

Note

❒ If you set **[Permit SSL/TLS Communication]** to **[Ciphertext Only]**, enter "https://(printer's address)/" to access the printer.

User Settings for SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)

If you have installed a server certificate and enabled SSL (Secure Sockets Layer), you need to install the certificate on the user's computer.

The network administrator must explain the procedure for installing the certificate to users.

If a warning dialog box appears while accessing the machine using the Web browser or IPP, start the Certificate Import Wizard and install a certificate.

1 When the [Security Alert] dialog box appears, click [View Certificate].

The **[Certificate]** dialog box appears.

To be able to respond to inquiries from users about such problems as expiry of the certificate, check the contents of the certificate.

2 On the [General] tab, click [Install Certificate...].

Certificate Import Wizard starts.

3 Install the certificate by following the Certificate Import Wizard instructions.

Note

❒ For details about how to install the certificate, see the Web browser Help.

❒ If a certificate issued by a certificate authority is installed in the printer, confirm the certificate store location with the certificate authority.

Reference

For details about where to store the certificate when accessing the printer using IPP, see the Web Image Monitor Help.

Installing Font Manager 2000

Important

❒ Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0, installing applications by Auto Run requires administrator permission. To install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has administrator permission.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Click [Font Manager 2000].**
4. **Follow the instructions on the screen.**

Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0

Under Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows NT 4.0 with Adobe PageMaker, you need to copy PPD files to the PageMaker folder.

PPD files have the .ppd extension in the folder “DRIVERS\PS\WIN9X_ME \(Language)\DISK1\” on the CD-ROM.

The “WIN9X_ME” folder inside the “PS” folder is for Windows 95/98/Me. Use the folder at this level that is appropriate for the operating system you are currently using.

The third folder “(Language)” may be substituted by an appropriate language name.

Copy the “.ppd” file to the PageMaker folder.

- **For PageMaker 6.0 default installation**
  The directory is “C:\PM6\RSRC\PPD4”.
- **For PageMaker 6.5 default installation**
  The directory is “C:\PM65\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4”.
  The “USENGLISH” may vary depending on your language selection.
- **For PageMaker 7.0 default installation**
  The directory is “C:\PM7\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4”.
  The “USENGLISH” may vary depending on your language selection.

Note

❒ If the driver is not set correctly after copying the “.ppd” file, printing may not be performed properly.

❒ When using PageMaker, the optional features that can be selected by the printer driver will not be active. The following procedure describes how to activate the optional printer features.

① On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.
The **[Print Document]** dialog box appears.

② Make the necessary settings in the **[Features]** box.

When Using Windows Terminal Service/MetaFrame

The following explains how to use Windows Terminal Service and Maintenance.

Operating Environment

The following operating systems and MetaFrame versions are supported.

❖ **Windows NT Server 4.0 Terminal Server Edition**

- MetaFrame 1.8 SP3/FR1 SP3/SP4
- MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/SP2/FR1

❖ **Windows 2000 Server/Advanced Server**

- MetaFrame 1.8 SP3/FR1 SP3/SP4
- MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/SP2/FR1/FR2

Supported Printer Drivers

❖ **When Windows Terminal Service is operating**

- PCL printer drivers
- PostScript 3

Note

❒ The RPCS printer driver is not supported.

❒ Some RPCS printer driver functions do not work if Windows Terminal Service is installed.

Limitations

The following limitations apply to the Windows Terminal Service environment.

These limitations are built in Windows Terminal Service or MetaFrame.

❖ **Windows Terminal Service**

In an environment where Windows Terminal Service is installed, some printer driver functions are unavailable, even if no Windows Terminal Service functions are used. Use the install mode to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client in an environment where Terminal Service is running on a Windows NT Server 4.0 Terminal Server Edition or Windows 2000 Server family computer. The following are the two methods of installation using the install mode:

① Use **[Add/Remove Programs]** in **[Control Panel]** to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

② Enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

```
CHANGE USER /INSTALL
```

To quit the install mode, enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

```
CHANGE USER /EXECUTE
```

Reference

For more information, see Windows Help.

❖ **MetaFrame's [Auto-creating client printers]**

Using **[Auto-creating client printers]**, you can select a logical printer created by copying the client's local printer data to the MetaFrame server. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- The settings for optional equipment will not be stored in the server after the equipment is disconnected. The settings for optional equipment will be restored to its defaults each time the client computer logs on to the server.
- When printing a large number of bitmap images or using the server in a WAN environment over dial-up lines such as ISDN, printing may not be possible or errors may occur, depending on data transfer rates.
- When using MetaFrame XP 1.0 or higher versions, we recommend making settings in **[Client Printer bandwidth]** under **[Citrix Management Console]** according to the environment.
- If a print error occurs on the server and the print job or a printer created in **[Auto-creating client printers]** cannot be deleted, we recommend the following:
  - MetaFrame 1.8 SP3, MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/FR1
    Make settings in **[Delete unfinished print jobs]** in the registry. For details, see the Readme file provided with MetaFrame.
  - MetaFrame XP 1.0 FR2
    Make settings in **[Delete pending print jobs at logout]** under **[Printer Properties Management]** of Citrix Management Console.

❖ **MetaFrame's [Printer driver replication]**

Using **[Printer driver replication]**, you can distribute printer drivers across all servers in a server farm. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- If the printer drivers are not properly copied, install them directly onto each server.

Cautions When Using Bluetooth Interface Unit

The optional Bluetooth interface unit operation mode is set to **[public]** as default.

If the setting is changed to **[private]**, only registered computers can use this printer via the Bluetooth interface unit.

Check the operation mode settings using Web Image Monitor or telnet.

Reference

For details about using Web Image Monitor, see p.162 “Using Web Image Monitor”. For details about setting items, see Web Image Monitor Help.

For details about making operation mode settings using telnet, see p.183 “bt-config”.

Information about Installed Applications

expat

Use of the software installed on this product, including the controller (hereinafter “software”) and the expat Version 1.95.2 application software (hereinafter “expat 1.95.2”), is subject to the following conditions:

The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including expat 1.95.2 and the product manufacturer allows the initial developer of expat 1.95.2 to be free from these obligations.

Copyright © 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

and Clark Cooper

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Note

❒ Information on expat 1.95.2 is available at:

http://expat.sourceforge.net/

JPEG LIBRARY

- The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

NetBSD

Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at http://www.netbsd.org/.

Copyright © 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

① Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

② Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

③ All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.

④ Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Authors Name List

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by TooLs GmbH.
- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Theo de Raadt.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- The software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley.
- This product includes software developed by Chris Provenzano, the University of California, Berkeley, and contributors.

Samba(Ver 2.2.2-1.1)

Copyright © Andrew Tridgell 1994-1998

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.

RSA BSAFE®

- This product includes RSA BSAFE® cryptographic or security protocol software from RSA Security Inc.
- RSA is a registered trademark and BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.in the United States and/or other countries.
- RSA Security Inc. All rights reserved.